

THE HISTORIE OF
THE GREAT EMPEROVR
T AMER LAN.

VVherein are expressed, encounters, skirmishes, battels, sieges, assaults, skalings, taking of cities and strong places, defended, and assualted, with diuerse Stratagems of warre, the which this great and Renowned warriour hath conducted and accomplished, during his raigne of fortie or fiftie yeares: with other instructions for the warre, which should not be vnownen of them that would attaine vnto the knowledge of armes.

Drawen from the auncient Monuments of the Arabians, by *Messire Jean du Bec, Abbot of Mortimer.*

Newly translated out of French into English, for their benefit which are ignorans in that language.
by H. M.



LONDON

Printed for William Ponsonby. 1597.

4
3
2
1
INCHES

TO THE FRIENDLY
READER.

Because this Historie (friendly Reader) was translated at the first, and now at this present imprinted and set foorth for thy only benefit: I thought best to recommend it rather to the Readers correction, then vnto any mans particular protection. For as I cannot otherwise thinke, but diuerse and sundrie errors are in the translating by me committed, necessary by thee to be corrected: so do I assure my selfe the Historie is so excellent, as it needeth not to be protected. For whether is to be considered the man in his honorable vertues, or the matter with her rare and diuerse properties, you shall find both the one and the other able to protect themselues, and euery way satisfie thine expectation. For both the which I will say no more then I find written by the French author, that the Historie is most true, and not deuised, according to the vanities of former ages, but

being as it were buried in a straunge and vn-
knowen language is reuiued from that obscu-
ritie by his trauailes, and presented vnto the
Reader in his own tongue through my paines.
V Vhereof seeing thou art to reap the fruit, I
doubt not but ye will accept and yelde mee
thankes for the same. I will not trouble thee
with a vaine commendation of the famous Ta-
merlan, who being amongst the worthy con-
querors, as the sunne with the other starres,
shall in the reading of this Historie shine
vnto thee his owne vertues. Fare-
well. From my house the xv.

day of October. 1597.



THE HISTORIE OF T A M E R L A N.



Auing read sundrie Histories, the which
doe attribute as a great want vnto the
happie fortune of *Tamerlan*, not to haue
a writer in his dayes, which might haue
left in writing his Historie vnto posteri-
tie: who surely had reason so to say, if this had bin true.
But without any cause did they mone him, insomuch as
his Historie is very famous amōgst the *Turks* and *Ara-
bians*, his conquests very largely discoursed, and many
of his worthy and notable sayings collected, with an in-
finite number of noble deedes left vnto the memoriall
of posterite, hauing bene no leſſe accompanied with
such good hap, than was *Achilles*. Very true it is, that
he had not an *Homer*, but a great and worthy person,
learned as well in naturall Philosophy, as in Astrology,
who was in the time of this Prince, a companion and
familiar of his conquests, named *Albacen*, an Arabian
by birth, making profession of *Mahomets* religion, not
according to the fond and vaine follies of the *Turkes*;
but for want of Christian instruction, he worshipped
one onely God, the author of nature, & maker both of
Heauen and Earth (the which *Mahomet* taught as he
had learned in the Schoole of the Christians) meaning
to be contrary vnto the Heathen, who did allow of sun-
dry Goddes. This Author then being fallen into my
hands, in my voyage into the East Countrey, I caused

*The History of
Tamerlan fa-
mous amōgst
the Turkes and
Arabians.*

The Franke
tongue amys
the Turkes.

the same to be interpreted vnto me by an Arabian, who did speake Frank (as they terme it) that is to say, Italian, & some time I spent, in associating my selfe so with this man, who commended greatly vnto me the eloquence & grauity of this author, wondering at his digressions, & entring againe into his matter so well to the purpose. It grieued me much that I had not the perfection of this language, to be a helpe vnto the riches of this History, for to deliuier it vnto my Nation with some grace: but I tooke therof as much as I could in his language, which was corrupted, as is the Frank tongue (so they terme it) which is a kind of Italian, mingled with Slauon, Greek, & Spanish, tonges very comon at Cōstantinople, with the Arabian & Turkish tonges: so as I could not gather but only the truth thereof, & not the drifts & grauity of the declaration, wherein the author had collected it for posterity, (& as he said) by the commandement of the Prince, who was a louer of learning, & excellent in the knowledge of Astrology & diuinity, as the custome of those Nations is to ioine the ordinarily together, studying vpon the vertue of names, & of the turning of letters, euē in their placing, writing the vnderneath starres, whereof they make sentences, by meanes whereof they wrought miraculously in the things of nature. This is that Zoroastrien & Bactrien science, that of Balaā, & some others in my opinion, which hath succeeded vnto so many Arabian Astrologians. Now then this Prince was endued with such knowledg, as made him admired of the people where he comaded, who are for the most part great wonderers, insomuch as this caused him to be accounted a Prince accompanied with the diuine vertue, considering the iustice he vsed in all his actiōs. This hath proceeded

The Tartari-
ans strange
kind of Astro-
logie.

Italian fables
written of Tamer-
lan.

euē so far that some Italians haue writte foolish things thereof,

thereof, as of certain kinds of Tents which he caused to be pitched, whē he besieged any city; one white, signifying peace, it yelding vnto his mercy; another red, signifying cruelty to follow; and the third blacke, signifying mourning to ensue. But I find not this in our Author, & I beleue the to be fables, as that of Romans, for the affaires of the war are not hadled in this maner, & we find that he was very courteous: onely he desired to abbase the pride of that Turkish Emperor, called Bajazet, the thunder of heauen, & would tread vpon his head, imitating therin the Diuinity, which pulleth down the proud & raiseth vp the humble. Therfore in a word, I say, that which our Historiographers report of him, is very little after this Author. This is the occasiō therfore that I desiring to write, in this solitarines which I haue chosen, seeing the continuāce of the miseries wherinto I haue often thrust my selfe with the hazard of my life, as I am bound for my king & country; where hauing receiued many wounds, by the fauor of my king, I haue sought againe the priuate life, which I had left, that I might not be seene in idlenesse at such time as men of worth were busied in sacrificing their liues for preseruatiō of their country. Now the that I may keepe my self frō writing any thing of these times, for to say true, it engendreth hatred in many minds, & especially the desire to be flattered, & they which cannot do it, are they not comaded to keepe silence? I must forbeare to collect that which some men of worth hauing both seene & endured, doe leue, as a monumēt of our follies vnto posterity, which should rather in my opinion be buried, then brought to light, for they be instructions to kindle mens minds for the trouble of their countries, finding therin colours for destruction of the same. Do you not thinke that the Histories of the Romaine ciuill warres, hath becne the

Tamerlan re-
sponsible for
the good, and
surious to the
bad.

The disceno-
dities arising
from the Hi-
stories of ciuill
warres.

occasion of the ouerthrow of many common-wealtheſ? and do not you beleue, that of the *Grecians* being read by *Cesar*, did harme, by lyfting vp his courage, and making him hope for high matters (as thoſe of *Marius* and *Silla*) to ſet *Rome* on fire, and their owne Countrie in bloud, ſaying moſt truely, (and they of this age ſhall pardon me) that man is without loue, vnworthy of fire and water, who cauſeth and loueth ciuill warres. We muſt needs blame them in recyting thoſe, and take from them the hope of obtayning thereby glorie of the posteritie, but muſt rather blame & dishonor. What was the cauſe that parricide was not forbiden by a law written? because this were to inſtruct that it might be done. Our countrie is another mother, ſhall we recite vnto posterity the praise of the parricide, which they co-mit againſt her the true mother? For this occation therefore I hold my peace, & bury in my ſelf as muſh as I may, the coſpiracieſ which they had made againſt their king, City, fellow-citizen, the hallowed altars, & againſt all both diuine and humane right. I will now declare vnto you with my *Arabian*, who this great Prince *Tamerlan* was. He was then of the bloud of the Tartarian Emperors, and hiſ father *Og* had for hiſ portion the countrey of *Sachetay*, wheroſe he was Lord. This countrey lying betweene the North & the East, is the ancient country of *Parthia*, vpon the coaſt of the *Zogdians*, & the chieſt citie of hiſ estate was *Samercand* ſituatiue vpon the riuere of *Iſſarle*. Some of our Historiographers would needs haue him to be the ſonne of a ſhepheard; but this haue they ſaid, not knowing at all the cuſtome of their countrie, where the principall reueneue of the kings and nobles coſiſteth in cattell, despifing gold and ſiluer, but making great reckoning of ſuch riches, wherin they abound

*The offspring
and ſtocke of
Tamerlan.*

*The cuſtomes
and reueneues
of the Tartar-
ian kings.*

aboūd in all ſorts: this is the occaſion wherfore ſome call the ſhepheards, & ſay alſo that this Prince deſcended frō the. So his father *Og* was Prince of *Sachetay*, aboūding in ſuch kind of wealth. And being come vnto the age of fifteen yeares, his father being already old, deliuereſ vp vnto him the gouernmēt of his kingdome, with the co-mandemēt ouer al his men of war. His father *Og* being giuen vnto peace, withdrue himſelf vnto a ſolitarie life, for to ſerue God, and end the reſt of hiſ dayes in quiet. He gaue vnto hiſ ſon *Tamerlan* (which ſignifieth heauenlie grace in their tongue) two ſufficient perfonages for to guide and affiſt him in the gouernment of hiſ eſtate: the one was caſted *Odmar*, and the other *Aly*, perſons in great dignitie and credit with hiſ father, whom this Prince diſgreaſtly honour as long as they liued, & euen after their death hee diſten often make mention of them before hiſ ſeruants, commenſding their ſeruices performed; a matter of no ſinal force for the mightie to make them wel ſerued, nor to forget their ſeruants eue after their death. This acknowledging doth greatlie allure men, as the forgetfulneſſe thereoſe doth grieue the for the preſent time, and cooleth the deſire they haue to ſerue. This Prince was wont to weare on hiſ hand the rings of hiſ two ſeruants, and was wont to ſay, that when he beheld theſe, he diſcall to hiſ remembrance two precepts, which he had receiued of them; and this diſhe the better to retain them in memorie againſt he ſhould minister iuſtice. Now this Prince was wel inſtructed in the *Arabian* learning, and exerciſed hiſelfe much therein, and at ſuch time as they thought him to be either in the Bathes, wherein they are very curiouſ in that countrie, being their chieſt delicacieſ, he was in the contemplacion and ſtudie of heauely things, with-

*The ſolitarie
life of *Og*, for
to ſerue God.*

*Tamerlan's
name.*

*Odmar & Aly
appointed to
affiſt *Tamerlan*
in the gouern-
ment of hiſ
kingdome by hiſ
father *Og*.*

*Tamerlan his
ſtudies and
learning.*

*The delicacieſ
of *Tartaria*.*

*Tamerlan's
contemplacion.*

out omitting anie thing notwithstanding that belonged to the gouernment of his estate, wherin he said his professed *Demon* did oftentimes especiallie direct him, accounting onely his estate prosperous when he had the heauēs fauorable. This Prince had within his eyes such deuine beautie, being full of such maiesy, that one could hardly endure the sight of them without cloſing of their eies, & they which talked with him, and did oftē behold him, became dumb, insomuch as he abstained with a certaine modesty & comelineſſe to look vpon him that discoursed vnto him. All the rest of his vifage was courteous and well proportioned: he had but little haire on his chin: he did weare his haire long & curled, contrary to the custome of his countrey, who are ſhaued on their heads, hauing the ſame alwaies couered, but he contrariwise was alwaies in a maner bare-headed, and greatly eſteemed of his haire: therfore one of his familiars demanding of him wherfore he did not ſhauē his haire like other men, he ſaid vnto him, My friēd, I never told it vnto any body, but (ſaid he) the affection I know thou bearest vnto my ſeruice, cannot deny it thee. My mother came of the race of *Sazon*, for a mark wherof ſhe aduised me to honor long haire. This was the cauſe that made him reſpected of his men of armes, and the moſt part of the did beleue there was ſome vertue in thoſe haires, or rather ſome fatal destiny, the whiche many did beleue to be ſo; & verily they were of a diſkis colour drawing towards a violet, the moſt beautifull that anie eye could behold. His ſtature was of the middle ſort, ſomewhat narrow in his ſhoulders, he had a faire leg & ſtrong, the ſtrength of his body was ſuch as no body did ſurpaſſe, & often on the feſtial daies he made triall of his ſtrength with the moſt ſtrong: & this he did with ſuch grace & humanity, that he whō he ouercame held him-

Maiesy in
haireſſe

The cuſtom of
the Tartariās.

Tamerlan
wore long hair
and why.

The diſcription
of Tamerlan.

ſelf therin moſt happy, althoſh it be a diſgrace amogſt the Tartariās to be thrown to the ground in wraſtling. Now as he was martial & diſirous of glory: the firſt war that he attepted was againſt the Moscouit, who came & ſpoiled a citie which had put it ſelf into his protecſion, & had entred alſo into his countrey, & being retired, proclaiomed open war againſt him, gaue him battaile neer to the riuere *Mascha*, althoſh the Moscouit had a great army, which he had gathered together long before. On the other ſide, the Prince determining to reſiſt him, aſſembled all his forces, & thoſe of his allies *Tamerlans*; & firſt, he made appeare vnto his ſoldiers the stoutneſſe of his courage; for this day he perſourmed the office both of a ſouldier & Eimperour iointly together. Now the place of fight being diſcomodious for vs by reaſon of a little hil which the Moscouits had take, wheron they had placed ſome 6000. men on foot, who with an infinit number of arrowes hoped to ouercome the that went to the battaile, who were conſtrained to paſſe by that place. Now he being aduertiſed that the Moscouit would not come to the battail, but only meant to ſhew himſelf, & after that to retire 20. leagues, as they are accuſtomed to do: he being diſirous to end this war by a battail, did adiuge, beyond the aduife of his Counſell, that the enemy wold not fight, vnielſe by assaulting this mountaine, he were urged therunto againſt his wil, or els loſe thoſe 6000. men which were there placed. Then he co-
maded 20000. men of his army, led by *Aly* (Colonel of the footmen) to ſet vpon them. Now by this aduife he brought to paſſe two effects: the one whereof was, that he kept his horſmen from being inuiriſed by the arrowes of the Moscouites; the other was to compeſt them vnto the fight, in caſe they would not otherwiſe come

Tamerlan his
firſt war a-
gainſt the
Moscouites.

A Stratagem.

thereunto, the which tooke place. For as the Moscouite thought to retire and succour them, *Tamerlan* at that very time caused his army to passe ouer the riuier *Rosna*, which gaue the occasion of battaile. The Moscouite could not retire but in disorder, our Arme hauing passed ouer: nowe the Muscouite had verie great forces, and men well trained vp in the warres, hauing had alwaies warres with his neighbors, the king of Polonia, with whom he had then friendship, and the yd of tenne thousand verie good horse. There were also with him many Hungarian Gentlemen, led by *Vdecelaus* a Hungarian Gentleman, who had brought with him more then eight thousand horse; the opinion was that he had in his armie fourscore thousand horse, and a hundred thousand footmen. Our Prince *Tamerlan* had in his armie about six-score thousand horse, and a hundred and fiftie thousand men on foot, but not so skilful in points of warre as those of the Moscouite: for our estate had long enjoyed peace, and our souldiours were indeed trained vp in the disciplin of warres, but not in the practise thereof. For Prince *Og* loued peace and rest from his childhood, and kept himselfe with great mildnesse with all his neighbours, hauing nothing at all increased his borders, commended only for preseruing of them wisely. So these two Armies were the one before the other, and in the meane time the mountaine was forced by the Parthians, and defended by the Moscouites, euen the one assisting theirs. To conclude, the fight continued two houres, the armies nothing at al medling therein, but yet every one did encourage their souldiours, & exhort them vnto the battaile. The order of *Tamerlan* was this; that is, he caused all his armie to be deuided into squadrons, each consisting of sixe thousand horse,

*The armie of
the Moscouite.*

*The armie of
Tamerlan.*

*Tam
erlan
armie*

*The
ord
er of
T*

*The order of
Tamerlanes
battaile.*

horse, except his own, which was often thousand, so as he made eighteen squadrons, his owne being reckened which made nineteene. The Auantguard was conducted by *Odmar* who led nine squadrons, flanked with 40. thousand men on foot, deuided both on the right and left sides, who should shoot an infinite number of arrowes. The battaile was conducted by *Tamerlan*, who led ten squadrons, his owne being therein closed, and 50. thousand footmen, the best and choiseſt souldiers of his whole armie. Prince *Thanais*, a kinsman vnto the Prince, led the Arere-ward, with fortie thousand footmen, and sixe squadrons: hee had some three thousand horse aduenturers, whome they call *Oliagues* in their tongue, the same which we tearme the forlorne hope.

The Moscouite did not obserue that order, but did fight by double ranks with Launces, and there was a space to help themselues therein, and to breakē them, notwithstanding those nations doe not breakē them at all, and they seemed to be a greater number then wee, making a great noise. The Auantguard of the Moscouites was fullie twentie fife thousand horse. The Polonians and Hungarians were in the Auauntguard, the which was led by the Moscouits sonne, whom they call the Prince of Russia: the battaile consisted of 40. thousand horse, wherein was the king of Moscouie with manie of his Lords, and all the forces of his Allies, the Arere-ward was a great squadron squared with ten thousand horse; the footmen of the Moscouit were between the Battaile & the Arere-ward. Then our Prince seeing *Tamerlan* his speech vnto his soldiers, & began in this sort to speake vnto them: It is not for riches (my companiōs) nor for the enlarging of the ranged in battaile array.

*The order of
the Moscouites
battaile.*

limits of my empire, that I doe fight this day with your assistance, but it is for a thing more excellēt, seeing the same is to purchase glory & honor vnto the Parthiā nation. The same which was in old time the bōuds of the glory of the Romā name, who could never conquer it, nor plant their Trophees therein. Let vs not then give place vnto the glory of our auncestors, and make manifest this day vnto me, the faithfullenesse that is in you, & let the same be accompanied with your courage, for your king is not accustomed to retire without victory, I haue caused you to passe ouer this riuier, for the trust I haue in the force of your arms, let vs rather dy thē repas it without carying a laurel garlād on our head. Whilst this passed thus, the Parthiā soldiers led by *Aly* had won the mountaint, which was not without great fight: but the victory fel on our side, which gaue great hope vnto our army of more happy successe. This made the Moscouites to acknowledge the fault they had made, the which was wel taken hold of by vs: so the Prince gaue the signe of battaile, marching forward all along the mountaine which his souldiers had wonne, enflamed with their victory to begin the fight. And he placed 6000. fresh soldiers ypon this mountain to fauor his armie. At this instant the Moscouite gaue the signe of battaile, and aduanced forward. Then the Prince *Tamerlan* willed his men likewise to come forward: and sent his commandement therof vnto *Odmar*, who returned answer, that seeing the Moscouit did with such heat seek to come vnto the fight, he would suffer him to come vnto him, and would attend his comming resolutely in the place of battaile. Now *Odmar* alone could by his authority bixle the boldnes of this yong Prince, who desired to go forward, & maintain in the meane time, like an old soldier, his aduantage, which was of no small waight for the vi-

Battaile be-
tween the
Moscouite and
Tamerlan.

story, the place being of greater aduantage for the enemies, for in assaulting thē we lost the force of the fight, & we had also the wind & Sun in our eyes, which raised a great dust made by our horses, which kept the Moscouites frō beholding the efect of their soldiers in the fight, that either as they won or lost they might be succored. So the fight was begun by the Moscouites, who strongly with al the fury that was possible charged *Odmar*, who stisly resisted all this forcible violence, but not without the losse of many of his men, and himself thrown to the ground, al his horse also broken, was fain to retire himself vnto the left wing of his footmen, where he was again mounted on horleback, whereupon reuniting his men together, whilst the Moscouite did fight with the maine battaile, conducted by the Emperour *Tamerlan*, he renued with those whom he had so vnited together a new charge, setting vpon the flank of the Moscouits, which did greatly impaire their strength. The fight endured 4. or 5. houres; insomuch as the heaps of men and horse were so many defences against the blowes of the arrowes shot by the Parthiā footmen & by those of the Moscouites. Now the Moscouite horsmen had pierced the maine battaile, the Hungariās fighting so resolutely as the Prince remained seuered with 3000. horse only, & after the Parthian maner began to fight in retiring: wherupon the Moscouite thought he had won the battaile; then, whē he being reunited vnto his Arier-ward, led by the Prince of *Tanais*, who had gathered together 14000. horse, and almost all the footmen, it behoued the Moscouite to retire backe, notwithstanding before that he made a strong resistāce; but at the length multitude & skil ouercam the force & valor of the Moscouites, the victorie bending to the Parthians side, the which they did pursue hotly. *Tamerlan* was hurt on

the forehead vpon the side of the left eye, and had two horses slaine vnder him in the fight; the Moscouite falling into the hands of a priuate souldiour, as a prisoner, being not known, so led himself (his armie being wholie ouerthrowne, and diuers Moscouite Lords taken prisoners) and retired himself with nine or ten thousand horse in order: manie of their footmen saued themselves by the benefit of the night. The place of their retiring was about ten leagues from our armie, and he passed ouer a riuer, where he reunited together his men during the night. The least losse he had was of his footme, who tooke not the course of his horsmen, but rather as soon as they perceiued the victorie encline to the enemie, they retired themselves all along the moultains for their better aduantage: a thing which greatlie fauoured the Moscouits. *Tamerlan* employed himself in giuing God thanks for this victorie, after he had pursued the enemy three leagues; the next day he reviewed his armie, and found that he had lost of his side for his part betweene seuen an eight thousand horsmen, and betweene three and foure thousand footmen. The Moscouite lost some seuen and twentie thousand footmen, and betweene fifteene and sixteene thousand horsmen. This same day was *Odmar* the safegard of his Prince; for it is not to be doubted, had not the hindrance bene he gaue, when the Moscouits assaulted *Tamerlan*, setting vpon him with all their forces together, but that they had bene able to ouerthrow the Prince of *Thanais*, and the Emperour who was reunited vnto him. By the euent of this Battaile we may learne how much aduantage he hath, who attendeth the comming of his enemie with a resolute mind, in the field which he hath chosen for the battaile, hauing first caused the same to be well viewed by his

*The thakful-
nesse of Tamer-
lan vnto
God for his
victorie*

*A good adver-
tisement for Ge-
nerals.*

his men, and especially by his Captaines. Secondly, the hurt that commeth in not obseruing the dust which the wind raiseth. Thirdly, that the Arier-ward well led, is the occasion of the victorie, and oftentimes the preseruation of the Prince. Fourthly, how necessarie it is to haue the chiefeſt strength of the battaile in going to assault the enemie. Now our *Tamerlan* after he had giuen thanks vnto God, caused a view to be made of his Armie, buried the dead, both his owne, and of his enemie, acknowledged the deserts of his soldiours, yeelding vnto them such houour as they had deserued. In this battaile he lost *Hally*, who was slaine by the blow of an arrow, after he had forced the moultain, in going to the battaile, being generall of all his footme. This Prince was greatly grieued therewith, cauſing his bodie alwaies to be laide in his tent vntil his returne vnto Samarcand, where he caused him to be buried verie honourably: hee was the beginning of the greatnessse to Samarcand, and of the fame of his name, by making of a stately tombe for *Hally*. The Prince did slacke no time after so great a victorie: for hauing giuen such order as was necessarie to a great armie. (I wil not forget to declare, that when as this Prince did behold so many thousands of men lie dead on the ground where the battaile was fought, he turned himselfe vnto one of his familiars, lamenting the condicione of them who command ouer Armies, & commanding the profession of the Emperour his father, he counted him happie, for that hee had sought rest, acknowledging humaine miserie, the which in destroying his owne kind, procured his glorie. That for his part such tokens of victory were sorrowful euē vnto his hart.) He set forward, and came into the borders of the Moscouite, all

*Great honou-
r done to *Hally*
after his death
for good ser-
vice performed
by him in his
life.*

*An notable say-
ing of *Tamer-
lan* for making
of warres.*

the country being astonished, & euery one flying before his army, the Moscouite had retired himselfe vpon the losse of the bataile, & had likewise caused al his footme to retire, making a shewe as though he had not lost his courage, & because he had reunited 30000. of his horsmen together, he bragged to trie very shortly his fortune againe. But for all this seeing his victorius enemy come and enter into his country, he thought he should haue to do with a mighty enemy: and hauing called together his principal Captaines, he passed ouer the riuier called *Nifort*, & taking their counsell, he did resolute for the preseruation of his subiectes to send vnto the Conquerour, and once to make triall of his mercie, as he had already of his forces, being informed by the prisoners of the noble mind and mildnesse the which this Prince vouchsafed vnto them, he determined to send Embassadours to treat with him, and to assay for to amend that which had bene ill done. The Embassadours being arrived, he receiued curteouslie, bewailing in a maner the fortune of their maister, rather then vaunting and exalting himself for the victorie: and as it were more modest then the conquered, he asked them how the Moscouit did, & for what cause they came vnto him. They gaue him to vnderstand, that they had in charge from their Prince to treat with him, desiring the abstinenesse of armes, and that they were ready to performe vnto him all things reasonable: they beseeched him moreouer to vse victorie as a thing which was the gift of Fortune, and might at another time change, calling vnto mind the estate of humane things, which are vnstable. Prince *Tamerlan* made them answer, that he had taken armes for the preseruation of his confederates and subiectes, from the iniurie done vno them by the Moscouite,

Embassadours
from the Mos-
couit to treat
of peace with
Tamerlan

uite: and this was the cause of the victorie, for that hee had iustlie enterprised the same. That hee referred the victorie vnto the God of Battailes, & not vnto his own strength, or forces of his souldiers, and for these reasons he was not therby more insolent: for it was the custome of the Parthians, retaining the same from the glorie of their ancestors, that in aduersitie their courages doe nothing at all faile them, and that prosperitie likewise doth in no sort blind the so far, that they shuld not be mindful of iustice as wel in good as bad fortune. That it was iust they shoulde satisfy the victor, & shoulde promise not to enterprise any more the troubling of his allies, then shoulde they haue peace with his armes. He also required that they shoulde become tributaries of a hundred thousand Duckats, and shoulde pay all the charges of the warre, amounting vnto the sum of three hundred thousand Duckats, he then would send back again all the prisoners, & withdraw his armie; that for security hereof they shuld giue him pledges, which shoulde be changed euery yeare; vnto all which they agreed. So was this warre ended to his contentment, returning with glorie vnto the Prince his father, in whose countenance no bodie could perceiue any ioy for his sonnes prosperitie, as hee whom the care of heauen had so rauished, that hee no longer set his minde on earthly things. Now *Tamerlan* was receiued into all his countries with much honour and triumph, the great *Cham* of Tartaria, brother vnto his father, sent presentes to gratifie him, making offer vnto him of his daughter in marriage, and that in marrying of her, he would cause him to bee acknowledged as Emperour throughout all his kingdomes, as his next heire, himselfe being nowe old, and out of all hope to haue anie

*A notable say-
ing of Tamer-
lan.*

*Articles of an
agreement con-
cluded vpon
betweene the
Moscouite &
Tamerlan.*

more children. Hereupon he presently tooke his iorney towards him, being in the citie of Quauicay, where he was receiued with all kind of triu mph and magnificēce; there did he shew himselfe braue in all maner of gallant shewes and combats, as well in iest as in earnest. And as these nations are full of vanitie, and desirous to make shew of their strength & agility, *Tamerlan* caried away the prize therein, whether it were in shooting neere with his bowe, or in changing horses in the middest of the courses, or in breaking an yron in running at the Quintaine; he made euery one wonder at his dexterity, and was crowned the sixt day after his comming thither with the ioyfull consent of all the subiects of the Emperour his uncle, and of all the Court. After that he maried the Emperours daughter, desiring first to bee crowned before the marriage, to the intent that none should think that the Crown came vnto him by means of her, but by succession, the daughters not at all succeeding into Empires. It was also to assure his estate, & hauing remained in that place by the space of two moneths, he returned from thence with his wife to Samercand, in which citie he delighted greatly to remaine, because the situation thereof was verie faire; and for that the citie is accompanied with a faire riuer, which causeth great trafique, and maketh it richer then any citie within that countrey. As he abode there the Moscouite sent to visit him with many presents of faire horses, & many excellēt furres, the which did greatly content him, for he had receiued newes that the Moscouite did arme himselfe, the which was true, but it was against the Polonians, and other of his neighbors. Who made their repaire vnto him for his assistance, earnestly desiring his aid; which he would not do; making answer

vnto

*The Tartari-
ans exercises.*

*Tamerlan his
marriage with
the great Clās
daughter.*

*The situation
of the city of
Samercand.*

*Presents from
the Moscouite
vnto Tamerla*

vnto them, that he had giuen vnto the Moscouite the dearest thing he had in the world, which was his faith. Manie notwithstanding of the Court corrupted by the Embassadors of the king of Polonia, vsed perswasions to mooue him to fauour the Polonians, declaring vnto him, that it was a Maxime, that it behouued him not to suffer his neighbour to waxe too strong, especially of so mighty a kingdome as was Polonia; and that this was the means to make the Tartarians and Parthians terrible vnto the Moscouites. That it was necessary at the beginning to oppose himselfe against such greatness, the which being suffered to increase, would in the end prooue hurtfull vnto vs, and then would it be verie hard to ouerthrow the same. The Prince answered, that at what time soeuer the Moscouit would not performe that which he had promised vnto him, he had sufficient means to punish him, seeing he had alreadie ouercome him with the Parthians, which was but a small prouince within Tartaria, and that at this day being increased to so great an estate as the whole Empire of the Tartarians, he had occasion to feare him the lesse; he hoped that his of-spring would also adde more Empires if it did maintaine equity; that in the meane time the Moscouite should breake his forces in one enterprise, hee would likewise bring to passe his, wherein he should iustlie get honour, and augment the limits of his reputation. That the peace betweene him and the Moscouite was notoriouslie knowne vnto all his neighbours, the breach whereof should not proceed of his part, and that it was beneficiall both for him and his subiectes: that God doth punish those who vniustlie enterprise warre against their neighbours; that this hath bene the occasion of the greatness of our house, that his ancestors

*Tamerlan his
worlie an-
swere vnto the
Polonians, who
desired aide of
him against the
Moscouite.
A Maxime.*

A notable saying of Tamerlan.

haue alwayes had this iustice before their eyes, in as much as they haue neuer enterprised warre but in their owne defence, notwithstanding it is 300. yeares since they knew what it was to haue fortune cōtrary vnto thē, and that he beleuied certainly that proceeded frō that Justice which the God of hostes obserued towards his; that if he were desirous of warre, and therby to get honour and reputation, he had many things to demand of his neighbours, who during the raigne of his father, which sought onely heauen and neglected the earth, desirous of peace, hath permitted: the which he might iustly redemand, and vpon refusall, by armes make way vnto the liberty of his subiects, tyraunised vnder vnlawfull Lords. *Odmar* seemed greatly to allow of the Princes reasons, although hee had bene one of the first which entred into this cōsideration to feare the greatnessse of the Moscouite; and he wondered at the maner he vſed in counterpeyſing ſo vprightly in equal ballances iuftice with his magnanimitie; the which notwithstanding was not transported beyond the course of equitie, what reasons ſoever diuerſe wife men of his Councel declared, concerning the ancient enmitie betweene the Moscouits and Parthians, eſpecially for the controuerſie in religion: but all this was diſanſuled, *Odmar* allowing the purpose of the Prince, the which he alone knew, & the others ſpeaking only as old Counſellers, relying vpon the anciēt maximes by the which are maintained and assured the greatnessse of Monarchies. For *Odmar* alone was called by him at ſuch time as the great *Cham* his vnkle did impart vnto him his affaires: and amongſt other matters, he propounded vnto him the enterprife of China, promising him affiſtance and aid, and giuing him to vnderſtand how necessarie it was to vndertake this war for the better affuring of his

estate, ſeeing the king of China had much gone beyōd his ancient bounds. So as our Prince had this iourney in his mind, and prepared himſelfe therunto, he had not otherwife refuſed their counſell, and the wife opinions they propounded vnto him, being alwayes obedient vnto reaſon and not to any other paſſion, and then eſpecially when the queſtion was of warre, & for the good of his affaires; a thing for which he was as much to be cōmēded, as for any other vertue whatſoever; for by others he was eſteemed ſtrōg, couraſious & stout, but by this here mentioned, he was accouētēd wife & vertuous, which maketh kings to be honored & admired: wherof he that is the owner, is Lord of one of the greatest Empires that men can obtaine; for the wife man onely hath the dominion thereof. And what auaileth it (I pray you) to conquer abroad, when as home-matters are miſerablie ſubiected vnder the fury of our foolish paſſions: is it not very hard to cōmand another, when thou commandest not thy ſelfe, thou being the ſlave of thy follies, which do break thee with all their force againſt the moderate rock of wiſdom, which houereth about thee, mocking at all that thou doest without her? *Salomon* alſo the king of Israel praied for it, ſo did our Prince often: this was the praier he moſt commonly made vnto God; and for *Tamerlan* praied for wiſdom into God.

A worthy cuſtome of Tamerlan.

A notable saying of Tamerlan.

where he abounded: but that he found fewe which did beautifie his mind with good precepts & instructions, wherwith to gouerne so manie sundry people whome God had subiected vnder the obedience of his scepter. He had in his Court a Christian whom he loued much, and euerie one greatlie respected, named *Axalla*, a Geneuois by birth, brought vp from his youth about his person. This man principally did stir him vp vnto great enterprises, and notwithstanding his religion, hee trusted him. Now he had all religion in reuerence, so as it did worship one onelie God, creator of all things. He often said, that the greatness of Diuinitie cōsisted in the sundry kindes of people which are vnder the coape of heauē, who serued the same diuersitie, nourishing it self with diuersitie, as the nature was diuers where it had printed his image, God remaining notwithstanding one in his essence, not receiuing therin any diuersitie. This was the reason that moued him to permit and graunt the vse of all religions within the Countries of his obedience, alwayes prouided (as I said before) that they worshipped one onely God, detesting the idolatrous and strange goddes, in so much as he regarded not the diuersitie in religion, if they were able to serue him; so as this Christian attained vnto great honors and dignities neere vnto him, as hereafter you shall heare.

Now to returne frot: my digression: Our Prince was desirous of warres, knowing that he could verie hardly maintaine his owne estate and so manie seruantes, whose fingers would tickle if they were not employed in making of warres. So he determined to make warre with the king of China (who is called the Lord of the world, & child of the sun) which was no smal enterprise.

But

*The Author
saith that this
may be pr.ised
in a Pagan &
infidel, but not
in a Christian
Prince.*

But before he would begin the same, he sent vnto the said king of China, for to demand right for some countries (which they cal Hordas) abiding places, & townes, or rather countries fit for the feeding of cattell, the which this Prince of China had vsurped long before, and euen the passages of a riuier called Tachij, which is beyond his limits, which are walles (the which are between the kingdoimes of the great *Cham* and of our *Tamerlan*) buildest of purpose by this king of China to defend him from the roades of the Tartarians and forces of our Prince, so as this was begunne with the aduise of the great *Cham*, and for his benefite as well as for the Princes. Therefore to accomplish his enterprise, in the meane time that he attended for the returne of his Embassadors, he caused his forces to come forwards from all parts, appointing vnto them for the place of meeting his owne at the Horda of Baschir, where all his armie assembled: and other ayding troopes of the great *Cham* in the deserts of Ergimul at a certaine day, in which place he should ioyne with all his armie. The armie of the great *Cham* consisted of two hundred thousand fighting men, wherein were all the braue men of his Court, who were accustomed vnto the warres, the Emperor which then raigned, & was old, hauing greatly increased his limits, and conquered a great countrey, so as these men were well trained vp in the warres, and accustomed vnto trauaile and paines. Now then the Embassadors which were sent, returne and informe the Prince of the will of this proud king of the world, this king of China (who was named so) who puffed vp with vaine glorie, was astonished how any durst denounce warre against him, making this proud answer, that *Tamerlan* should content himselfe that he had left him

*Embassadors
vnto the king
of China from
Tamerlan.*

*A wall buildest
by the king of
China to de-
fend his coun-
try from the
roades of the
Tartarians.*

*A proud an-
sweare of the
king of China
returned vnto
Tamerlan by
his Embassa-
dors.*

that which he might haue taken from him, and that his armes and forces were of another sort then those of whom he published the victory, to bring thereby terror vpon his neighbours. This answere being heard, our Prince marched directly vnto the armie, and gaue order for the conueyance of victuals from all partes, sent to hasten forwarde his confederates, emparted the answere vnto the Emperour by Embassadours dispatched from him, caused the boldnesse of the king of China to be published, to make manifest vnto all the world the iustnesse of his cause. Before his departure he went to take leaue of his father, who endued with a singular & fatherly affection, said he should never see him again, and that he hastened vnto his last rest, and hauing made solemne praiers ouer the Prince his sonne for his prosperitie, kissing him a thousand times, drew off his Imperiall ring, and gaue it vnto him, not asking whither his iourney tended: and calling *Odmar*, he bad him farewell, recōmēding his faithfulnes vnto his son. This was done with a grauity, wheroft the grace was more diuine then humaine: then he departed and drew towards Samarcand, where the Empresse his wife remained; whom he carried with him as is the custome of that Nation, & after he had (being religious) visted the Tombe of his seruant *Hally*, he caused his soule three dayes to be praied for, according to the rites of his law: whereupon he presently departed, hauing taken order for the well gouerning of his kingdome in his absence, committing the charge thereof vnto *Samay*, a man well practised in affaires, & he who had the charge of our Prince in his youth: for I must needes say this by the way, that our Prince had alwayes a naturall inclination towards those which had brought him vp in vertue, shewing vnto them

A kind parting
betweene the
father and the
sonne.

The custome of
the Parthian
kings to carrie
their iuves
with them vnto
the warre.

Samay made
gouvernor of
Sachetay in
Tamerlanes
absence.

The courteous
nature of Tamer-
lan towards his
bringers vp.

them in a manner the same honor, as if he were yet vnder their gouernment: and this he did thorough a gentlenesse of nature which was in him, that made him beloued more then I am able to expresse vnto you. So then he marched forward in the middest of his armie, which consisted but of fiftie thousand horse, and one hundred thousand men on foote, relying principally on the forces of the great *Cham* his vncle; who aboue all desired this warre: he did not forget to gue in charge that the rest of his forces should be readie vpon the first commandement as soone as he should be ioyned with the forces of the great *Cham*, and marching forwardes he had stayed by the way, by reason of some distemperature which had surprised him thorough changing of the ayre as the Phisitions affirmed. But yet notwithstanding the forces which *Casiles* Captaine of the armie of the great *Cham* conducted, went dailly forward. Now the newes was spredde into an infinite number of places of his distemperature, yet did he not neglect to send vnto the great *Cham*, and often aduertise him of the estate of his health, to the end the same should not cause any alteration, the which he did fore-see by reason of his preferment vnto this Empire by the great *Cham* his vncle: and he was in doubt of a certaine Lord named *Callix*, who was discontented therewith, and had not as yet neither gratified nor acknowledged him as all the other subiectes had done, and they reported thereof diuersely vnto him; but this Prince vnto whom gentlenesse being naturall, was alwayes of opinion, that it would not bee conuenient for him to disturbe the quiet of the kingdome which was giuen him, during the life of his vncle, who desired it as old age doth naturally:

Tamerlan his
Armie mar-
ching against
the king of
China.

notwithstanding some report that vpon pollicie hee suffered this warre to be moued, wheras he might haue remedied the same, making it as a meanes to win the hearts of his new subiects, who liked well of him alreadie, and also to make himselfe to be feared of those that heaped vp conspiracies against his promoting vnto the new Empire. For kingdomes are for the most part obtained, and likwise preserued by the good-will gotten in well commaunding men of warre: it produced also another effect, which was, that they who were sedicious, wasted of theselues, or else became his affectioned seruants by the ordinary seruice in the warres, and by this meanes drew them out of their countrey. Now concerning his delay it was by sundry diuersly interpreted; some said that he had bene aduertised of some vproare to be attempted, when he should be farre seuered from thence, and had passed ouer the mountains of Pasanfu, and that *Calix* staid vpon nothing else, in so much as the companies of the great *Cham* were gone forwards, euen beyond the mountaines, hauing passed the riuver of Meau, and were encamped at *Bouprou*, the which *Calix* vnderstanding, thought he shold haue the means to worke his enterprise. Thereupon hauing assembled great store of his most faithful followers, he tooke counsell with them, that this was the meanes to ouerthrow the purposes of *Zachetay*, who would raigne ouer, and bring them vnder his Empire: and that seeing their Prince had bene so badly minded as to doe the same of his owne minde without calling of them which had interest in that election, that now was the time to assure their libertie, which was in doubt to be lost, and caused also a rumor to be spread of the sicknesse of this Prince, that the great *Cham* was old, the greatest part of his forces

Tamerlan his
pollicie to cut
off the braches
of sedition.

The conspiracy
of *Calix* a-
gainst Tamer-
lan in his ab-
sence.

forces farre separated from him, that they should soone attaine vnto that they desired: that his enterprise herein was so assured; that so soone as his armie wes assembled, he would shew himselfe before Catay, he was certaine that presently there wold be a change in his fauor; that his father had commaunded there; that it is long since he knew the affection of this people, which inclined vnto him; that they had not as yet seene their newe Prince; that they would easily beleue whatsoeuer he declared vnto them; that the *Zachetay* was farre seuered from them; that they had to do with a great enemie, to whom also he had sent Embassadors to aduertise him of his practise; that he was assured his enterprise would haue happie successe; that they would foorthwith dispatch a messenger vnto the great *Cham* their Prince, to assure him that they bent not their forces against him, <sup>An old pres-
tence of all re-
bels.</sup> but were his faithfull and obedient subiects: but they armid theselues, because they would not be governed by the Parthians their auncient enemies (for these Nations hate one another how neere neighbours so euer they be, as doth the Spaniard and the Portugall, the English men and the Scot) that they knew this Prince, in respect of his great age, hauing no posteritic was desirous of quiet rest, and desired nothing more then to end his dayes in peace, they would permit him so to do without altering any thing in the same; that they hope the Parthians are so badly entertained by the king of China, that in stead of setting vpon them they shall thinke theselues happie if they may be suffered to enjoy peace; that they will march forward towards them at the straites of Tenduict, to hinder their returne. The propositions of *Calix* were great and well practised: for it was a yeare since he had won the peoples good will,

and he heaped together whatsoeuer was necessarie for his insurrection: but this was done secretly, notwithstanding diuerse had giuen aduertisement thereof vnto the Prince *Tamerlan*: but he despised that practise, or at the least made a shewe so to doe. Yet notwithstanding doe I knowe, that he was not so sicke at *Ca-chobache* where he remayned verie neare a moneth, that he had not in his vnderstanding (the which he wisely dissembled) the reuolt which *Calix* practised in his new estate; that he delayed but onely to vnderstand the certainty of the events. And I haue oiten heard him say, that if it had not beene for feare of offending the great *Cham* his vnkle, he had helped the same at the very beginning, without suffering the same to be set on foote: this was the cause that this Prince made so long abode. The Tartarians which were brought vnto him by *Calibes*, were vexed for hauing receiued newes of the preparations made by the king of China; they complayned that oportunitie and season passed away, so desirous were they to manifest vnto their new Prince their courages, and this was their dayly talke: but some matter of importance happened, and a great alteration was found in the Princes disposition, who was forward and diligent for executing of that speedily which he had with ripe deliberation resolued of. The which maketh mee beleue that he had very good aduertisement, and that he waited the oportunitie. Now he gaue order for matters behind him, to the end that no newes might be spread of his armie: but rather that they should thinke that hee had passed the mountaine, and had vpon his necke the armie of the king of China, which was betweene the mountaines & him: thus *Calix* thought greatly to trouble him, when he

he rose in armes against him, and did thinke that he had already assaulted the wall which the king of China had made against the Tartarians. But *Calix* was thrust forward rather with a desire of ruling, then beginning the same with any wisedome, making too great hast: & as his enterprise was craftily cōducted, so was it cunningly discouered, and all fit remedies prepared therefore whensoeuer the same should happen. As soone then as the Prince was aduertised of the pretences of *Calix* thus discouered, he marched one dayes iourney forward, to the end he might approch vnto *Calibes*, and impart the same vnto him, & assembling all his followers & counsell together, he discoursed vnto them in this manner: I nothing doubt but that all of you wil aduise me to deſt from this enterprise, considering the armies which be raised vp within the hart of that countrey, where you all desire I should raigne, & where with the full consent of all the chiefeſt seruants of the Emperour my Lord & vnkle I haue bene receiued: and ought not I then helpe him to punish the rashnes of *Calix*, who alone hath disdained to obey me, & allow of my promotion vnto the Empire of the Tartarians? But it behoueth vs also to make prouision against this enemy which we haue before vs, who seemeth to be rather a defendor then an assaulter, according to the aduertisements we haue receiued of his preparations. We must also thinke that *Calix* hath not attēpted this without hope of being supported by the king of China, against whom he did fee that wee did arme our selues, for to require iustly that which belōgeth vnto vs. There is good cause therfore we foresee how to hinder him from entring into our kingdome, whilst I shalbe busied in reducing this bold fellow vnto his dutie. We must therefore strengthen our borders,

*Tamerlan his
Oration vnto
his ſoldiers
vpon the con-
ſpiracie of
Calix.*

and leaue all my munition and prouision of victuall in this place, the armie which wee shall leaue here will spend them, we will carrie backe with vs all our artilleries and engins vnto a safe place, we will leaue vpon the borders fiftie and twentie thousand Parthian horse, fortie thousand of those sent by the Emperour my Lord and Vnkle, and a hundred thousand footmen vnder the charge of *Calibes*, of whose faithfullnesse I am most assured. I will likewise aduertise *Samay* to set forwards towards me with fiftie thousand horse as soone as he can, and my self with all diligence, will march forwards with the rest of my armie towards this bold fellow, & when I shall be aduanced, I will attend the counsell and commaundemen of the Emperour. His discourse was allowed of, although *Calibes* was desirous to accompany him, notwithstanding he thought obedience was better then sacrifice. They which had not vnderstood of the doings of *Calix*, thinking this a matter of great importance, there was in the Counsell contrarie opinions; the one saying it was necessarie to assure matters at home, the other party, that it was a great enterprise to seeke to make head with an armie against the king of China, & in the meane while to haue so daungerous a Cancer within his realme, as was the reuolting of the people: but these men entred not into the most secret counsell of the Prince, who had long since foreseen the practises of *Calix*, hauing a great armie most readie to ioyne with him vpon the first commandement sent vnto the same: neither did they any thing at all perceiue, that the Prince *Tamerlan*, how much disquieted soever he made shew to be, was very glad to haue occasion ministred to enter with armes into the state by him newly obtained, so as the same might seeme iust in the eyes of the Emperour

Emperour his vncle. For by this meanes he should take possession of his gift, obtaine the good will of his souldiers, and be well assured to punish this fellow so thoroughly, as others which might peraduenture be tickled with the same humor would take therby example, & therefore wisely had he separated the forces of the Tartarians. For what face soeuer *Calibes* set on the matter, he harkened what wold become of *Calix*, that he might likewise make some cōmotion: there was left with him to command ouer the Parthians the Prince of Thanais, without whom he could not doe any thing, for that he led the auantgard. Thus was the army deuided in two parts; the king of China remaining long before he was aduertised of all this, and thought he had all the forces both of the Tartarians & Parthians vpon his armes, so as this was of no small importance to fauor our affaires: for *Tamerlan* had especially giuen commandemēt, that the passages which are easilly gotten, might as diligently be kept, to the end that the king of China should not be aduertised of the tumult. Then *Tamerlan* set forward his auantgard vnder the leading of *Odmar*: he promised vnto himselfe shortly a happie successe in his affaires, and aduertised the Emperour of all: but it came vnto him when he was sicke. And surely it was high time for *Tamerlan* to march forward, or else all had beene reuolted, so leauing his footemen he made great iourneyes. Now during the time that hee had bene aduertised, and made his abode to consult, which was the space of two monethes: *Calix* hauing presented himselfe with a hundred thousand fighting men before Cambalu, a very great citie, and chiefe of the Prouince of Catayo, the inhabitants thereof came out to meeke him, and did also receiue him with all the ioy.

The wise foresight of Tamerlan.

Good directions from Tamerlan.

that might be. They had sent likewise to Euinsay, where the Emperour was at that time, to intertaine and assure him of their obedience, and that they did rise vp onely because they would not bee subiected vnto the Parthians. They had with one cōsent also sworne not to acknowledge *Tamerlan* for their Emperour: but they did beseech the Emperour that they might rather receiue *Calix*, to the end (said they) the greatnessse of the Tartarians should not bee buried within the straite bounds of the Parthians. But as soone as they heard that *Tamerlan* approached, it did bring much hindrance vnto the affaires of *Calix*: for these confederates so lincked together, made full reckoning that his absence would be for the space of eight or tenne moneths at the least, what prosperity soeuer he were like to haue in his enterprise: but he had plotted out the busynesse for them in another sort. Euen as it is often scene, that when a Schoole-master entreth on a sudden into the schoole, with a rod in his hand, when as the schollers are in disorder, busied in beating one another, or neglecting the charge giuen them by the Schoolmaster: in such and the same manner did *Tamerlan* come vnto the Tartarians whom *Calix* raised vp, being the at Cambalu whither all the Prouinces came to gratifie him. This was bad newes for him, to heare that *Tamerlan* approached, one of the greatest Captaines of the world, and who was the best followed, being most worthie that not onely they and the Tartarians should acknowledge him, but also all the Nations of the world, being worthie to commaund them, because he was so vertuous. He did as much as he could to cōceale these newes, but report cannot be kept secret, it runneth vpon the house topes, and slideth euen into the houses, & looke how

the

the Moone diminisbeth and encreaseth, being never stedfast in one estate: so many people which had vndiuisedly followed him, began to assemble themselues together for to make new matches, lightly changing their opinions. You might then haue seene the people gather together in troopes within this great Cittie, here a thousand, and there two thousand, not knowing whereupon to resolute, euery one of them being afeard of the iust indignation of *Tamerlan*, vnto whom so lately they had sworne their obedience, & had acknowledged him for their Prince and Emperour, according to the cōmandement of his uncle. They knew him to be of the bloud of so many Emperors, and that he had ruled ouer them with such great iustice, they had therefore their consciences which did accuse them as guiltie, and did see the hand alreadie lifted vp to punish their offences. This caused euery one of the people throughly to bethinke them of the follies by them committed, in opening their gates vnto this rebell, that conspired against his Prince. Now whilst our army marched towards Caindu, and from thence vnto Calatia, whither our army went easily, looking for the forces of his natvie countrey of Zachetay to come & ioyne with him: he did not yet forget to send forward dayly of our souldiers towards Cambalu, so as they supposed all our forces to be on the necke of them alreadie, which gaue great terror vnto the people: for the nature of them is such, that often times they ground their affaires vpon prosperitie, which they hold most assured, not so much as dreaming that the euents of matters of the world be often contrarie vnto that they haue in themselues imagined. *Calix* perceiuing that the people did

*An apt compa-
rison of report
vnto the meane*

*Confused fears
within the city
of Cambalu.*

*The nature of
the common
people.*

repent, he thought best to withdrawe himselfe out of Cambalu, determining to oppose himselfe against *Tamerlan*, and sent for his power from all places, putting all vpon the euent and hazard of a battell. Hee had also receiued aduertisement of the small contentment the Emperour conceiued of his proceedings, and how he had sent for all his forces to march thither, that from thence they might goe and ioyne with his Nephew *Tamerlan*, and how he falling againe into the extremitie of his sicknesse, had sent his imperiall ring vnto *Tamerlan*, had giuen commaundement that he should be obeyed euen as his owne person, both during his life, and after his death; and therefore knew well, that he must of necessitie aduenture all, seeing *Tamerlan* came towardes him. So hee drewe out of Cambalu full fiftie thousand men, as well Burgesse, as souldiers which were there in Garrison, hauing wonne all the Captaunes which the olde Emperour had placed there in Garrison, amounting to the number of thirtie thousand men, and him that commaunded ouer them, who had consented vnto the reuolt of this great Citie. To make it short, hauing assembled all his forces, he had fourescore thousand horse, and a huydred thousand footemen, the which he had gathered together from all partes. I knowe that the sedition of *Calix* was such, and in such manner plotted, that he did euen prouoke the Moscouites, that at the verie same time they might inuade Zache-*tay*. Wherunto the Moscouite as a faithfull Prince, would not in any case hearken, a thing which I haue often heard *Odmar* report, commanding the Moscouite, and maintaining him in peace with his master, by often remem-

*The great Citie
sent his imper-
iall ring vnto
Tamerlan*

*A good adver-
tisement for
men in autho-
ritie.*

remembering him many times of this good turne performed: for it is very credible, that if the Moscouite had at the very same time entred Zache-*tay*, he had hindered the forces of this Prouince, in such sort as it should not haue beene able at all to giue aide vnto the affaires of *Cambalu*. Behold how they which guide the sterne of the common-wealthes-barke shoule in time giue remedie vnto the discontentments of the mightie. For when they haue attained vnto authoritie, they doe readily trouble all things, hauing therein alwaies very seditious minds, so as they are very willing to shuffle the cardes with them: and therefore such vproares are not to be neglected, but remedied speedily. Our army then marched with all diligēce, in such sort as certain scouts which were two thousand horse, had newes of the army of *Calix*, the which came forwardes directly towards vs, whereof they caused the Emperour to be certified speedily, who sent thither two thousand horses more, to the end they should keepe the passage of a riuer called *Brone*, by the which our victuals were conueyed vnto the armie, and also for to win alwaies time, the Prince knowing right well that the motions of ciuill wars be furious at the beginning, and that it is the best to resist them slowly, drawing them alwaies out at length if it be possible. For the people in the end acknowledging their faults, their meanes and money failing them, and oftentimes victuals also: on the contrarie side in a royll army none of all this doth happen, where all things are fauourable, and the souldiers well disciplined, obedience & order being wisely obserued. Then had the Emperour the guiding of his owne purposes, for he had receiued commaundement from the Emperour his vncle, to hazard therin all for all, deliue-

ring vp into his hands the safegard of his life and estate, that he might thereby end his dayes in peace, willing him likewise, to punish this arrogant fellowe and his partakers. By this meanes came forces from all parts vnto *Tamerlan*; but on the contrarie part, the enemies armie was then in his chiefest force, and beganne to feele the want of victuals, by reason of a desert and certaine mountains which it had passed, where there was a Lorde subiect vnto the great *Cham*, who after he had promised him helpe for the conducting of victuals from Cambalu vnto his armie, as soone as he perceived him to be farre off, changed his minde, and beganne to withdraw himselfe from his side, and to make warre vpon him: setting vpon his men, hauing gathered souldiers together, which was a great discomoditie vnto him for his armie, in such sort as he must of necessity come vnto a day of batteli. But *Tamerlan* hauing aduertisement of all his discomodities, found the means to passe ouer foure thousand horse to ioyne with *Cangi* (for so was this Lord named) to giue order thereby for cutting off the cōmodities which came from Cambalu: & (as I haue said) the Emperor hauing caused the foords of Brior to be carefully searched, and occupying all the passages with his armie, he possessed twelue or fourteene leagues of rich ground and good, hauing behind him the salt lake, and before him the riuier of *Ostan*. And there did he watch aduantage, staying the comming of his enemies, with whom they thought to fight, at the very instant they shold arriue; but they were therein deceipted, for they were kept occupied with roades and skirmishes, and the maine battell came not to the fight: so as it was two moones (or rather two monethes) before we aduan-

The proce-
dings of the
two armes.

aduaunced towards them, in so much as necessity constrained them to retire towardes Cambalu. The Prince thereof aduertised, passed ouer the riuier with his armie, which was found to be a hundred and fiftie thousand horse, and two hundred thousand footmen, resolued to ioyne battell, fearing least *Calix* would returne and winter at Cambalu, and should be driuen to fight within the same, where not doubting of the victorie, he feared yet least so great and rich a citie as that, being sacked, would bring vnto him two great discomodities. The first would be, the losse of the citie; the other, hee feared that taking such a citie by force, his armie should be consumed in the spoyle thereof, & vtterly destroyed: or that his old souldiers made too rich, would no longer follow him. After he had called his principall Captains together, who were much vexed because they fought not, in the end resolued therupon, very sory that therewas no remedy but that the possession of his Empire must be bloudie. Now he had warned *Calix* to forbear, and lay downe his armes, and he would pardon him, but this rash fellow (whose courage was not yet to be despised) made no accōut of al that: for purposing to commaund, hee could not resolute to obey, which did inuite him vnto a short life with happinesse, rather then vnto a long life honorlesse, euen as they which vndertake such follies must needs resolute. For it is very hard that the Prince his Lord shold assure himself therin, as lōg as he doth liue, so ticklīsh is this desire of raigning without a cōpanion. So our army went vnto Chiny, and made seuen leagues; the enemie hauing knowledge of our passage, turned his face, and they say that *Calix* turned himselfe vnto three or foure of his companions, lifting his hands vnto heauch and said vnto

The speech of
Calix vnto his
companions.

them that neuer in his life had he receiued more acceptable newes. The Parthians (said he) haue at this very instant passed ouer the riuier, and come towards vs, and if *Tamerlan*, who bargained so much, will fight at this present, I cannot receiue a greater good turne. For (said he) whatsoeuer shall become of me, it cannot but bring vnto me an immortall glorie; for if I conquer him, who is he in Asia that may be cōpared vnto me? the Empires of the Tartarians & of Sachetay shalbe mine: for I fight against the forces of these two great estates, the which I haue separated thorough my practises: my power consisteth of these two peoples: if I be ouercome, my glorie shall be very great, in that I durst, and vnto this present time we haue gotten this glorie, that the valour & courage of *Sachetay* was two moneths shut vp betwene the riuers of Brior and Ostian for the terror of our armes: therefore the victory which he shall gaine of vs, shalbe vnto vs alwaies glorious. Thus discoursing I haue heard (sayd he) did shew a great stoutnesse of courage: He aduaunced his armie forward, so as the auantcourers of the two armies encountred ech other, and our men were driuen euen into our Camp, a thing which greatly displeased *Odmar*, who was in the auantguard, for the Emperor was very sory that he had not made them stronger when they came neere vnto the enemie, but the excuse was, that they did not imagin the rashnesse of *Calix* to be so great as to set forwards three leagues. The next day was spent in discoursing of battailes, euerie one for his part, and to exhort the Captaines & soldiers, to deuide the gouernementes vnto Captaines, with the rankes and ordinances. *Calix* was of the age of forty, he was a Captain renowned with the great *Cham*, he was one of the chiefeſt in dignitie and place, and

they

they had alwayes respected him within Tartarie as a person most worthy of the Empire, if the glorie of *Tamerlan* and his reputation had not so far excelled. The Armies began to be viewed the one of the other about eight of the clocke in the morning, where there were very many skirmishes before they came vnto the main battaile (according to the fights of these nations) it was a great plaine wherein they met at that time, with like aduantage on either part; *Odmar* led the Auantguard (as I haue already said) wherin there was forty thousand horse, & three-score thousand footmen; he made three squadrons, wheroſe he ſet forward one before him that began the battaile. *Tamerlan* marched in the ſame order, but his squadrons were much stronger, the footmen both of the Auantgard and of the Battaile were on the right and left wings. *Tamerlan* had drawne out ſixe thousand Parthian horse and two thousand Tartarian for the Arier-ward, & had committed the charge therof vnto a faithful ſeruant of his called *Axalla* (a Geneuois borne) who had great credit with him, because he had bene brought vp with him in his youth, and had good triall of his faithfulness, valour, and industrie; hauing giuen him in charge not to fight at all but vpon the extremitie; and also to gather together all that ſhould be ſcattered from the Armie. *Axalla* was a man of great iudgment, his vnderſtanding being good and quicke, and a Captaine in great estimation amongst the ſoldiers, although he worshipped God in another manner then we did, and was alſo a Christian. And he had many of them with him, whom he cauſed to come frō the Georgians and from Pont Euxin, who fought with great agilitie; this day did he ſhewe his great fidelitie and courage vnto his Prince. *Calix* on the other ſide,

*The order of
Tamerlan's
army ranged
against Calix.*

The order of
Calix battaile
against Tam-
erlan.

The battaile
between Tam-
erlan and
Calix within
the countrie of
Catalia.

Tamerlan
thowne to the
ground.

who was a well spoken man, was encouraging his soldiers to fauour his fortune, and the libertie of his nation: hee had deuided his troupes into three maine battailes onely, his footmen vpon the right hand, his owne person was in the middest of the maine battaile, with manie footmen which compassed him round about (according as we vse to fight.) Now *Odmar* that was a politike warrier, stayed their comming without remouing: his first squadron rushed furiously vpon this great multitude, that on the right side, wherin was his owne person, & the other on the left side gaue a great push, broke all the order of *Calix* armie, in such sort, as it was constrained to ioine all together, which was a great multitude: at this verie time the Prince charged, which ouerthrew all. You might haue seen in an instant amōgst these great companies thus opened, some follow, some flie, some kill, taking of horses, and men tumbling ouer and ouer; they held the victorie sure on our side, when as, behold, a maine force did come vpon vs, conducted by *Calix*, who had gathered them together, and they were betweene fifteene and sixteene thousand horse, which came & set vpon the Princes maine battaile on the flank, and pierced the same, and ouerthrew them in a maner all. Now you must understand, that those on *Calix* part retired at the verie first charge euē vnto their carriages, and our men had followed the victorie too hotlie, making great slaughter, in somuch as they charging againe, and finding our forces broken, he did easily shake our Ararie, and gaue vs a great checke, so throughly, that wee were vpon the point to lose the battaile. The Prince *Tamerlan* was throwne to the ground; in the meane while his maine Battaille retired, continually fighting according to our maner.

the

The Prince was not long in mounting againe on horsebacke, looking continually on his Arier-guard, which had not the meanes to ioine with him; and earnestly viewing the countenance of the same. Nowe our footmen at such time as hee went to give the charge, was open, and after shut againe, and had not bene as yet set vpon by anie, they had bene onely breathed vpon at the charges which had bene giuen; *Axalla* ioyning with it his troupes reserued for the Arier-ward. During this space *Calix* did hotlie pursue the troupe of *Tamerlan*, who retired, skirmishing continually with his souldiers, being almost all Parthians. The enemies maine battaile did greatly diminish, for his souldiers went a spoyling here and there within the campe of the Battaille, and they could not discerne by reason of the great dust, the Arier-ward which followed in good order after, killing and ouerthrowing all that vvere opposed against them. When as (behold) at the same instant there came a crie eu'en vnto *Calix*, with Turne, turne: there being a thousand or twelue hundred horse which *Axalla* had seuered from the rest, who hauing already aduanced themselues brauely, were come to handigripes with *Calix*, hauing receiued commandement to mingle amongst them, for to redeeme the Princes maine Battaille, which was pursued by them. Then did *Calix* in returning perceiue, that both his Empire and glorie, together with the good fortune which he one houre had fully inioyed, were for euer vtterly lost, & then began he to repent himselfe of his folie: & after he had commandied a charge to be giuen for the repelling of the auant-currers, hee staid, vnitig his men, for he had as yet 11000. horse: but he could not descrie whether those which were with *Axalla* shold be

Calix eniced
the victory one
houre.

footmen or horse: for they all appeared vnto him horsmen, a thing which did greatly amaze him. On the other side he did perceiue that at the same instant he left pursuing the Emperours maine battaile, in that very time it had gotten a loose off, ioyning together such of the men as had bene scattred from the same; attending the successe of this charge, that hee might beginne his fight againe, notwithstanding he being bold and braue had his recourse vnto extremitie by his armes, and ha-
ving nothing in his face but boldnesse, he exhorted his men to fight valiantly with him, and pursue the good fortune which the great God had put into his handes this day: that these were scattered men which sought to ioyne with their fellowes, and it was necessary to hinder them from that. In this meane time his Army did stronglie ioyne it selfe together, the which *Axalla* well considering, thought that the good fortune of two great Emperours was this day in his power, and vnder his conduct, and that his life or death could not but prooue most glorious, being for the safetie of his good master, who had put in him so great confidence; he encouraged his souldiers valiantlie, commanding the first charge to be giuen, and brauely assyning his men, hee charged so strongly, that he passed cleane through the squadron of *Calix*, who was hurt in his mouth with the blow of a Lance, after had performed the dutie both of a souldier and Captaine. In the end, valiantly fighting, he fell into *Axallas* owne handes, the which with one voice he proclaimed through all his campe, the which ouerthrew the courage of all his souldiers. Prince *Tamerlan* also set vpon the flanke of one of those troupes broken already by *Axalla*; and so was the victorie entire. There were slaine of the one side and of the other,

more

*Calix exhorta-
tion vnto his
men.*

*Calix taken
prisoner by
Axalla.*

*Tamerlan his
great victory
against Calix.*

more then fiftie thousand men. It cost our Emperour deare, who said that he never fought with greater danger of being ouercome. He honoured greatly *Axalla* for his good endeavour and wise conduct, who brought vnto him *Calix* sore hurt in the mouth with the blow of a Lance, and another blow of an arrow in the body. He spake vnto him, but the other being fierce and bold, answered him nothing at all, making a signe that his mouth did hinder him; he was kept vntill the next day, *Calix beha-
ded.* and was iudged by all the Counsell worthie of punishment: whereupon he caused his head to be smitten off, the which he sent to be presented vnto the inhabitants of Cambalu: he caused the like to be done vnto all the chiefe leaders, not for crueltie, but for necessitie, knowing very wel, that the means to cut off the foot of civil warres, is to punish the heade of the same, for they be *Hydras* which grow vp but too fast. After this the Armie marched into the kingdome of *Cataio*, a countrie <sup>A description
of Cataio.</sup> rich in grasse, and in all kinds of pastures, abounding with great quantitie of beasts, and people which knew not what warre meant. The Prince gaue commandement that these people should not be accounted as enemies, but his good subiects, that he would vse all the cities well, as *Cangi*, *Sochgi*, *Gonzae*, *Tagni*, *Togara*, *Congu*, which had revolted, and were come to sue for pardon at his handes, in humbling themselues before him; the which he granted vnto them, enioyning them only to prouide sufficient victuals for his armie: and never to be so ill aduised as to harken vnto those, who for their particular ambition would withdraw them from the obedience due vnto their true and naturall Prince and Emperour. Now this mercifulnesse was presentlie spread abroad, which was of no small importance for

*Fifty thousand
men slaine in
the battaile be-
tweene Ta-
merlan &
Calix.*

the appeasing of others who had put all their hope in extremitie, which is in losing their owne liues to make others doe the like: & especially the inhabitar̄ts of Cambalu had taken this resolution: but being informed of the Emperours clemency, changed their opinions; notwithstanding some of them which were the most sedicious, who thought they should run the same fortune with their leaders, were in despaire, doing as much as in them lay, to draw with them the destruction of their citie, the which this mildnesse had appeased, and changed into hope of the Princes clemency. In the meane while our armie daily aproched, and at such time as we came neerest, the more did the feare of all the citie increase, in somuch as the Prince was aduertised daylie from those which fauoured his side, of all things within the citie, and he was assured that euerie one determined to obey the Conquerour, and to do whatsoeuer he commanded. The which being knowne vnto the Prince, he left all his armie at Gonsa, and himselfe went directly vnto the citie of Cambalu, where all thinges were made quiet, by the means of thirtie thousand soldiers, being the ordinarie garrison, whom he caused to enter therinto before him, and two houres after entred into the same himself, being receiued with great magnificence, not yeelding as yet to pronounce the word of pardon, referring all vnto the Emperour, and to the ordinarie course of iustice. Willingly saying that hee pardoned the common people; shewing himself sundrie times openly gentle and curteous, honoring them greatly amongst others of the citie, which had taken his part. Now he stayed for the returne of one of his fauorites, whom he had sent vnto the Emperour, to carrie him newes of the victorie, and of the death of

The ordinary
garrison at
Cambalu of
30000. souldi-
ers.

Calix

Calix, and that the chiefe of this faction remained prisoners with him; also to know what iustice the Emperour would appoint to be inflicted on those Citizens which were the first beginners of the reuolt of this citie: for the Prince being desirous to be esteemed mercifull, and to win loue within this great citie, would not execute iustice of himselfe, nor in his owne name, but by the Emperor his vnkle, whom he did gratifie herein, leauing the authority wholly vnto himselfe, and by this meanes he was not not esteemed cruell. Thus the Prince after he had remayned here eight dayes, departed. He was not many dayes iourney from the citie before he receiued tydings how the great *Cham* his vnkle willed that iustice should be executed on them which were the first mouers of this reuolt; the which was executed accordinglie in the name of the Emperour, and by his speciall ministers; in such sort, that as the people accused the cruelty of the Emperor, they commended the mercie of *Tamerlan*. Nowe the Emperour was better in health then he had bene, and greatlie desired to see the Prince, who referred the resolution of this, whether he should goe vnto him, vntill hee came vnto his Armie, desirous to heare newes thereof, remaining vpon the frontiers of China. In this sort went hee away, separating himselfe as much as hee could from the execution which was in doing at Cambalu, where some two hundred Burgesses were put to death, for an example vnto the rest, their heades being set vp in the middest of the market place, in signe of a terror vnto the which should hereafter rebell against their Prince. Thus was this warre brought vnto an end, to the great honour and reputation of *Tamerlan*. And it is also reported for most

A terrible ex-
ecution.

certain, that if he had not stopped the way of this mischiefe, he had vtterly lost this estate, the conspiracie being in a maner generall: but the diligence he vsed in opposing himself against it, caused many to lose their courages. Therefore in such reuoltes it is a speciaall point, for a Prince to shewe himselfe, to enter into the field, and passe through his Prouinces, to encourage his owne, and giue terrour vnto others. For the sedicious doe often declare lies vnto the people, the which the presence of the Prince doth dispearle, euен as the cleare Sunne doth a darke cloud, and aboue all to shew that they feare not those which conspire, making but small reckening of the same. For it is said, that he which first beateth the fields, hath best company with him; he must not thinke that without weapons in his hand, and not being on horsebacke, the matter may be remedied with words and admonitions. A thing plotted by a sedicious person, is continually attempted, or but deferred, but in the end it breaketh out; and therfore a wise and aduised Prince should disperse it speedily by the means of iustice: for such spirits are neuer pacified, but by the tetrour of death, and of those which are guilty, the which must be prosecuted as soone as it is discouered, and looked vnto at the first rumour therof, hauing good espials in euery place, and prouiding so well on enemie side, that as soone as the same shall happen, hee may be on the necke of the sedicious. You see howe wisely our Prince made vs hereof, for it is not to bee doubted, but he had discouered the conspiracie long afore the execution of the same. This was the occasion that he kept his forces in readinesse within the country of Sachetay, and marched himself forward to minister occasion vnto others, to discouer vnto him their euil affections

*A good adver-
tisement for
Princes.*

*A good adver-
tisement vnto
Princes.*

affections, by this means to make the goodness of his cause appeare manifestlie vnto all the world. A matter of no small importanc to preserue himselfe, and the peoples affections, when they are once seasoned therewith: so as it is the best to make them assailers, if it be possible, and bring to passe that their assailing may be their vtter vndoing. Therefore is it necessarie, if possible to be (though halfe) on horsebacke, as soone as aie shall be discouered to haue a stirring humour and to trouble good order. This must be done, for wordes doe nothing at all satisfie them: you must of necessitie come vnto blowes, for they be ordinarie rash fellowes, whose eyes ambition blindeth, or else if they be wise (who see great likelihood at such time as they enterpise it) their attempts haue often good successe, when they haue to doe with negligent and carelessse Princes, or effeminate, or of small courage, who giue themselues too much vnto delicacies, and spend their time in pleasure, whereas they ought to haue a watchfull eie to looke to the preseruation of all within their kingdome, & their hand ready to repulse iniurie comming from without. You see how well our Prince yseth his mildnesse, care, and watchfulnesse: before this hee was but halfe Emperour of the Tartarians, but hereby assured himself therof with good dexteritie, & die the Emperour neuer so soone, there is no shew that there can happen anie moment of trouble: for he is there reuerenced for his great mildnesse and clemencie, for rewarding of the good, & bearing somtimes with a fault (if there be any) and for hauing moreouer a stiffe hand to punish the wicked and sedicious. Nowe to come againe vnto our discourse: as soone as our Prince was returned vnto his Army where he found Odamar, who

*Tamerlan by
mildnesse won
the loue and
reverence of all*

there attended his coming, the which caused all the Armie to march forward and meet him, where hee was receiued of his souldiers, and with a loud voice called by all his Captaines and souldiers ; Most great Emperour and most victorious, as they are accustomed to doe amongst the Tartarians. The Prince after he had long discoursed with his Captaines both of the beauty and greatness of the citie of Cambalu, hee arriued at his tent, where after hee had declared vnto *Odmar* in what sort all things had passed at Cambalu : he asked his aduise whether hee should goe and visite the Emperour his yngle. *Odmar* who well perceiued that the Prince desired it, and called vnto his remembrance the honor which he had receiued when he was at *Quinzai*, and that he would haue bene very willing to spend the winter with the Empresse, staying for the spring for to returne vnto the enterprise of China. But *Odmar* which was no flatterer, and who was a great Counseller of estate, and faithfull vnto our Emperour *Tamerlan*, spake vnto him in this manner : Invincible Emperour, so do I beseech you, as may be found in you both valor to conquer, and wisdom to vse the victory: you haue left your Army, the which for the space of six moneths hath bene busied in opposing it selfe against the forces of your enemies ; he whom you haue left is a Tartarian, one of the chiefest of this nation; do you not know that the Tartarian and also the Parthian, doe in a manner acknowledge none for Prince worthie to command them, but those that go with them vnto the warres ? On the other side, doe you nothing consider, that you haue enterprised this warre to augment the glorie of him who hath chosen and called you ? Know you

Tamerlan
welcommed
vnto his army,
with new and
strange accla-
mations.

*Odmar his
wise speech as
answer vnto
Tamerlan his
question tou-
ching the vis-
iting of his
re-
gne.*

you not, that the king of China holdeth a great countrie which hee hath giuen you ? It behoueth that you manifest vnto him the affection of your seruice. Consider also that your glorie and greatness will bee more acceptable vnto him farre off then neere at hand. For being farre off, it shineth vnto him for the fauoring of his affaires, but neere, it maketh his owne obscure. Do you not consider the suspitions hee may conceiue of your greatness ? the repentings which often come to them which haue made men great, whom they desire afterwards to ouerthrowe: for Princes be variable ? What glorie can you obtaine by this journeying ? Necesitie constraineth you not thereunto, but your reputation will be whollie diminished thereby, and the way of your glorie is altogether contrarie vnto the same. It is better for you to winter gloriously vnder your tentes in the middest of your men of armes then within the statelic pallaces of *Quinzai*, in the middest of the sweetnesse of an effeminate Court . They which would finde fault with you will demaund the cause wherefore you left your Armie; they will say that you threaten the king of China afarre off: it is to be feared also least hee should oppresse your men, from whence will you returne to resist the same, while you bring together againe your men of Armes ? The Parthians would as your selfe returne vnto *Sachetay*, and the Tartarians vnto their *Horda*, but if you march forward, you shall prepare vnto your selfe an assured victorie of the king of China, and if you doe deferre it, it shall prooue dangerous vnto you, whereas it is now most assured, in as much as he thinketh your Armie busied within your owne country,

your forces empaired, the faith of your peopled chan-
ged, and all your Empire reuolte. He seeth your Ar-
mie led by *Calibes* to temporize, and being but as it
were to defend it selfe, and not to assault any other, he
supposeth that all your determinatiōs are ouerthrown.
Some may thus say vnto him (as some haue suspected,
and it is not without reason, but I will not affirme it,
being vnwilling to enter any further into your wise en-
terprises, the which God onely knoweth, who guideth
yōu) that you haue rather left *Calibes* there the chiefe
of the Tartarians, to deliuier your selfe from the suspi-
cion you had of him, then for any further desire you
had to accomplish your enterprise. Lose not this occa-
siō, the great God deliuereth her into your hands, you
hold her by the haires, suffer her not to slip frō you. If
I haue offended your Maiesty with my bold speech, do
with me what it shal please you, I am your slauie, lo here
my head. The Prince *Tamerlan* was very sad, and chan-
ged his countenance continuallie, when as *Odmar*
spake once againe vnto him, kissing the hem of his
garment in all humilitie, as wee are accustomed vnto
our Emperours in signe of subiection and bondage.
Then the Emperour answered him, that he had euer
knowne his fidelitie and loue, and that the cause of his
sadnesse was, for that he did not find in himselfe abi-
litie to recompence the same: and that hee acknowled-
ged now in earnest the wisdome of the Emperour his
father, in making choise of so worthy a Counseller
to assist him, and that hee certainly learned to know,
that the greatest seruitude which Princes haue vwith
God, was that there was no end of their glorie, seeing
their continual doing was their rest, as in the Diuinity;
and that when hethought to giue himselfe some ease,
then

*The great hu-
militie of the
Tartarians
vnto their Em-
perour.*

*The notable
answer of the
Emperour vnto
Odmar.*

then was the time he must in steed of the delicacies
and pleasures of Quinzay, make the deserthes of Cipri-
bit the restingplace from the trauailes of his newe vi-
ctorie: that it was ended, and his purposes determin-
ed: I haue also heard the Prince say, that *Odmar* did
not speake vnto him like an earthly but diuine man, &
that he verilie beleueed that God by his meanes did
call him backe from some mishap which would haue
light vpon him, to make his glorie increase the more.
Now the rumour was already spread ouer all, that the
Princes determination was to go and visite the Em-
perour his vnkle, the which tickled euery man with desire
to returne into his countrie, hoping to inioy the sweet-
nesse of his natvie soyle. When as commandement
was giuen for a generall review of the whole armie:
where the Emperor spake vnto his soldiers in this ma-
ner: We haue begun (my fauilloul soldiers) an enter-
Tamerlan his
oration vnto
his soldiers vnto
his going for-
ward against
the king of
China.
prise to go and assault the king of China, who hath of
late repulsed euен beyond the mountaines the Tarta-
rian name; but we were hindered to our great griefe
by the foolish rashnesse of *Calix*, and were driuen
to turne the bridle for to punish him, wherein you
haue all assisted me. It grieueth me that I cannot as
well brag of the fresh spoyles of a stranger, as I may
vaunt (by the meanes of your weapons) of those our
vnfaithfull Citizens; and in times past with your owne
selues making triall of my first Armes against the
boldnesse of the fierce Moscouite, although for this
last ciuill victorie I am further indebted vnto you, for
your greater endeouour, and the hazarding of your
persons being much greater, so were they our owne
people, who would not acknowledge vs, whereof I
cannot speake without shedding of teares, desiring

rather to burie such a victorie, what glorie and honour soeuer we haue gotten thereby. Neither do I recount these thinges vnto you, but for to manifest that I forget not your faithulnesse, and the great trauaile you haue endured with me. We must not therfore be weary, but must turne our weapons against those which thinke that we are greatly troubled, whereas wee are victorious. We haue left our companions, who haue temporized to heare the euent and successe of our affaires, all our munitions be there; wee must in that place (my souldiers and friendly followers) passe ouer the rest of winter; our cōpanions look for vs. The enemie is secure and looketh not for vs at this season of the yeare: for he perceiuetl that our Armie which is there is not sufficient for offence, but only for defence. You shall receiue double pay, the better to furnish you against the iniurie of cold: and as we shall be cloathed with double garmēts, I hope we shal be also apparelled with double glorie. Let vs march on merrily, I my self will go with you, and be companion of your glorie. After he had thus spoken vnto his souldiers, they all cried; One God in heauen, and one Emperour on the earth: and bowing downe al their heads in token of humilitie, they shewed how agreeable they were to obey that which he commanded. Thus euerie one returned into his tent, where they abode yet eight dayes more. The Prince sent back again *Zamai* vnto Sachetay with some fие and twenty thousand horse and fiftie thousand footmen, for the saftie of his estate in those parts. Thus after prayers were sayd, all the Armie being assembled together in the presence of the Prince (according to the custome of our Emperours) our Armie began to march forward. He forgat not likewise

to

*The crie of the
souldiers vpon
the Emperours
oration.*

to dispatch one vnto the Emperour his vnkle, to giue him vnderstanding of all this resolution, the which he verie well liked of. The Prince by the same messenger did beseech him to send vnto him in the spring of the yeare some fiftie thousand men to repaire his Armie, and certaine money also for the payment of his men of warre: which he graunted him. Moreouer the conducting of good store of warlike munition, & plentie of victuals for to renew ours: for this war was principally enterprised for the profit and greatnesse of the Tartarians, & for the importance which the losse of the Lordships of Paguin & Quifu was vnto them, wherby the king of China had greatly strēghened and assured his estate, in so much as he might at his pleasure enter vpon the Tartarians, and the Tartarians could not enterprise against him without great forces, for that hee had caused a wall to be made between the spaces of the mountains, which was fortie leagues long, so as they were defended hereby frō the ordinary incursions, the which continually did greatly enrich the, because they brought much cattel through the same, wherin the country of China doth greatly abound, by reason it is situated in a temperate aire, being neither too hot nor cold. *The tempera-
ture of China.* This was the cause that made the Emperour his vnkle to desire this warre; whom our Prince according to his duty wold to the vttermost of his power gratifie, as also his new subiects. So we began to march, and in eight & thirty dayes we arriued at Cipribit, the Army hauing found great discōmodities: there had we newes of *Cibes*, who was very glad to vnderstand how the affayrs had passed: he came to visite the Prince, who shewed vnto him a very good countenance, and gaue him particular vnderstanding of his determination, and

D 4

understood at large of *Calibes*, al that had passed within the kingdom of China. The next day the Prince mounted on horsebacke, and came vnto Pazanfou, where the forces commaunded by *Calibes* were at that present, the which had often fought with and tried the forces of the *Chinois*: but found the much inferiour vnto their owne. The Emperour caused a generall reviewe to bee made of all the forces which were vnder *Calibes*, and after hee beheld the countenances of these soldiers throughout all their ranks, he caused the to muster, & to receiue money, euery one crying, God saue the victorious & inuincible Emperour, according to their custome. I had forgotten to declare vnto you how the Prince of Thanais, who was left to command ouer the Parthian nation by the Prince, at such time as *Calibes* went to meet him, was left in the army to command it, where being desirous to shew his courage, had made warre, and meeting with foure thousand horse of China, led by the king of China his brother, he so allured the to him, that hauing entrapped the, he fought with and ouerthrew them, bringing a great number of horse and spoiles away and there remained dead vpon the ground fife or sixe hundred, the enemies being retired in disorder, if the night had not bene hee had obtained a most notable victorie. He had for this good fortune much honour at the arriuall of his Prince, and he had also daylie greatlie wearied the *Chinois* with ordinarie incursions: hee was sonne vnto one of the Princes sisters, & they greatlie honored him, as wel for his vertues, as the place frō whence he was descēded. He was as yet but young, his father being dead old, who had worthily serued the Prince (as you haue heard) against the Moscouites, commaunding ouer the arere-ward,

The Prince of Thanais ouerthrew a troupe of horsemen, led by the king of Chinas brother

ward, who was notwithstanding a most sufficient & politick Captaine. Now he was desirous of glorie during the abode which he had made, being the formost on the enemies side, and with great diligence had marked the wall and the places by the which he might enter by force, and sent many spies into the countrey of China, by certain little wayes that were within the mountains, who aduertised him of all. He had also gained through his courtesie a Lord of the same mountaines (called the *Lord of Vauchefu*) who ruled a great Countrey, with whom he had so well profited, that he made him desirous of a new master, and to submit himselfe vnto the Emperour, receiuing daily great discommodity by the warres which the Tartarians and *Chinois* made: so as he comming to visite the Prince of Thanais, he assured him of his desire to doe the Prince seruice, and to helpe him in the warre against the *Chinois*, the which the Prince of Thanais had wisely cōcealed frō *Calibes*. But as soone as the Prince was arriued, hee imparted the same vnto him, the which made *Tamerlan* desirous to haue some speech with him, so that as soone as the Prince had receiued commandement from the Emperour, hee sent vnto *Vauchefu* to aduertise him of the Princes arriuall, and of the commaundement which he had receiued: whereof the other was very glad, and hauing appointed a day, the Prince tooke his iourney (without stirring of the army) into the campe of the Prince of Thanais, which was neere vnto the riuer of Languenne, whither he had caused this foresaid Lord to come, who met him there. The Prince hauing spoken with him by his interpreters, hee assured him of much friendship, and the said Lord him of great fidelite and seruice, and after many promises made by the

*The Prince of Thanais gaine-
neth a Lord of the mountaines
to doe the Emperour seruice.
Vauchefu.*

*Conference be-
tween the Em-
perour and the
Lord of Va-
uchefu.*

Prince vnto him for his greatnessse and quiet, he discouered vnto him a passage, by the which hee assured him of entrance into the kingdom of China, & with facility to set vpō the forces of the king of China, which were appointed for safegard of the wall, the which as I haue said, contained fortie leagues; a matter which gaue cause of good aduilement vnto the Prince: for *Calibes* who was an old Captaine, found it a matter of great difficultie to go through this passage by force, according to the view he had taken thereof, and had caused the same to be reuiewed by others. For it was carefully kept by the kings forces, who was not wearie to be mounted on horsebacke, assuring himselfe that fiftie thousand men the which he had placed for the gwardes of the wall, were sufficient to stoppe all that would enterprise to force the same. So this Lord (much made of and gayned thorough the good countenance of the Prince) was a great furtherance vnto the good successe of this enterprise. Then the Prince after he had heaped vpon him gifts of faire horses, rich furses, and other rare things, he willed him to vtter that which he had to say vnto him. This Lord speake then in this manner: Know my Lord, that it is but losse of time to thinke that with your armes you shold be able to force the wall which the Chinois haue built against the incursions of your subiects, the defendants haue too much aduantage therein. I doubt not of your souldiers stoutnesse & of their courage, I know you haue cōquered many Nations with them, and that whatsoeuer you commaund the, they will die or do the same. I know you haue great and wise Captaines with you, that your person is only of all the world worthie to commaund them: but all this will be but in vaine against the wall of the Chinois,

where

*The speach of
the mountaine
Lord vnto Tamerlan.*

where I assure you there are fifty thousand men to keep it, and you cannot stay there so short a time, but there will come thither fiftie thousand more, led by the *Xianxi* who hath such a commaundement. The king of China will himselfe march forward also, who will giue you battell with two hundred thousand horse and as many footemen. After you haue fought, I beleue that the fortune and valour of your men may obtaine the victorie, the which will cost you deare: but for to shew vnto you how much the reputation and mildnesse of your men hath bound me vnto them, I will shew you a meanes by the which you may cause fiftie thousand men to enter into the kingdome of China, whom I my selfe will conduct; and they shall be on them which keepe the wall, in a manner as soone as they shall perceiue it. In the meane time you shall cause your men to go vnto a place that I will tell you, which will be very discommodious vnto the Chinois, by reason of a mountaine ouer against them, which you must cause them to win: for I assure my selfe, that when they shall perceiue your souldiers to be passed, they will loose their courage, and you may easily win the passage for to fauour those men of yours which shall be passed ouer with me. And for to shew vnto you the affection & fidelitie of that I speake, I will deliuer into your hands an only sonne I haue, and two little daughters with my wife: I haue also one brother, who I am assured will follow me to do you seruice. The Prince hauing heard this Lord speake, received great ioy thereof, hoping that his affaires should happily succeede, and this he kept very secret, for euuen the Prince of Thanais knew not the meanes that this Lord had; seeing there was onely present the Prince & an interpreter, and the Prince after he

*Hoffages offe-
red by the
mountaine
Lord vnto the
Emperour.*

had thus spoken vnto him, gratifying him with all hee could possibly, this Lord retyred himselfe, accompanied with the Prince of Thanais, who conducted him backe againe with all the honour that might be. So the Emperour returned from thence into his quarter, and the next day after he had imparted the whole vnto *Odmar*, and heard *Calibes* concerning that which he had learned of the departing of the king of China, and of his preparation, which was great. This enterprise seeming hard vnto him, after due reuerence yeelded vnto the Prince, he spake vnto him in this manner: Know my Lord, that I am your slave for to obey you: but seeing you require me to giue you an accōut of all that I know of the estate of the kingdome of China, for that I haue remained these sixe moneths vpon the borders by your cōmandement, to hinder them from passing the same, wherby they might hurt your enterprises, I can affirme vnto you that the king of China, who raigneth at this present is of great reputation, and hath increased the limits of his kingdome more then any of his predeces-
fors, he is proud and bold, he causeth himselfe to be named of his people, Lord of the world. All his strength consisteth in this wall opposed against vs, the which he hath caused to bee made by reason of the ordinarie roades of our Nation. I am of opinion that there be betweene fiftie and threescore thousand men at the guard of that wall, men for the most part trained vp in the garrisons of the king of China, and his best souldiers, & I know no good means to force this wall without great hazard and much losse of your men. I haue vnderstood that towards the lake Hogen you may find more easie entrance into the kingdome: but this will be 7. or eight daies iourney for your army, and there are many straite places

*Calibes oration
vnto Prince
Tamerlan.*

places, where your army (which is great) will be long time a passing: on the other side, this will be a space of time wherein the king of China may giue order for his affaires, who supposeth that hee hath not to deale but with me, whom you haue left with cōmandement only of defence. Yet I thinke this to be most for your aduantage, for that vietuals will be more easily conducted vnto your armie: you know that this is the principall sinew to bring forth a strong and furious combat. Therfore vnder correction of your graue and more wise aduise, this is as much as I know hereof, leauing vnto your selfe for to discourse of the inner parts of the countrey, whē we shall haue set foot thereinto, we will talke with you of the same. The Prince hard him very attentiuely, but he knew not at all that which the Prince had further learned, insomuch as the Prince, who would that his reputation and glorie should be attributed vnto his valour, and vnto those of his army, what practise soeuer he had in hand, and after euerie one had declared his opinion, he saied; that he hoped the great God the vnitie of whom he would maintaine against such idolaters, and his iust right should answere the reasons which do cōtradicte his purpose; and the valiant arme of his souldiers shall quite ouerthrow whatsoeuer opposeth it self against the same. Behold how Princes make themselues wondered at for their forces, whereas oftentimes they vse more the Foxes craft, then the Lions strength. Our Prince would wisely attribute vnto himselfe the reputation of ouercomming by open warre, and concealed from his souldiers that which he held as assured to execute it, to the end the honour of a happie conducting might be ascribed vnto him onely. Now our Prince ha-
ving satisfied euery one of the Kings and Lords that did

accompanie him, he appointed the meeting place for his armie to be at a certaine place, where he meant to chuse fiftie thousand fighting men, and deliuer them vnto the commandement of the Prince of Thanais, vnto whom he ioyned the Lord *Axalla* a Geneuois (for that he knew him to be discrete) for to accompanie him, commaunding him to giue credite vnto him, for his experience and fidelitie. The day appointed being come, the Lord with his brother came to the Emperor, hauing viewed the place againe, & found it to be forceable & fit to passe, assuring the Prince once again of the happy successe of their enterprise, & the Prince being assembled with them to conferre together, resolued in the end, that his person with al the army shold approch vnto the walles directly ouer against Quaguifou, in which meane space the 50000. men shold march forwards vnto the place appointed, and where they were assured to passe, conducted by the Chinois Lord, vnder the charge of the Prince of Thanais & *Axalla* Geneuois. The Emperor hauing not failed to deliuer vnto the best souldiers of his armie, & hauing set downe the order by them to be obserued, hee willed that the Lord *Axalla* shold leade twentie thousand of them, & shold march the first, the rest led by the Prince of Thanais, and that euery one should haue one of those Lords to guide them, that by their meanes the enterprise might be more safely directed. So hauing marched x. leagues, they arriued at the passage, the which was won not finding any man there to resist them: and hauing taken a light repast, they beganne to march forward other ten leagues which yet remained, where the Chinois were, who suspected no such thing, hauing only an eye vnto them which marched for to force their walles, assuring them-

Fifties thousand
men sent into
China by a se-
cret passage,
under the lea-
ding of the
Prince of Tha-
nais and *Ax-*
alla.

A secret way
found into Chi-
na, by the con-
duct of the
mountaine
Lord.

theselues to haue the maistry, considering their aduantage. But it fell out much otherwise, for euen at the very same time the Chinois did perceiue the Princes armie to approch vnto their wall, as soone did they discry *Axalla* with twenty thousand men, who aduanced forward being followed by the Prince of Thanais with thirtie thousand souldiers chosen out of the whole army, who without any cōmunicacion set vpon the Chinois, who came presently vnto the, hauing left a certaine number of their campe for the guard of the wall: but they were presently won by the footemen led this day by *Odmar*, who passed ouer so as the Chinois were cut off between our armies. When *Axalla* beganne the battell, he ouerthrew them in a manner all, the Prince of Thanais not hazzarding himselfe therin: there was great riches gotten this day, the king of China his cofin (whom he calld king) was taken prisoner: there was a great quantity of gold amongst the, as well on their armes as on their horse and furniture: they shewcd no great stoutnesse. The newes hereof being come vnto the king of China, who at that present time was at Quantiou, brought vnto him great astonishment, for that he iudged it a thing that could not possibly come to passe, you might haue seene euery one filled with fright, teares & cries, bewailing the losse of their friends. The king although he had not beene vsed but to see Fortune alwaies friendly with a mild countenance, & now to see her turned backward with her haire brisseling, he made thereof notwithstanding no great shew, but gathering together souldiers from all partes (as the custome is of these people) *The custome of the Chinois.* he caused all the Priestes and such as had the charge of holie things to come vnto him, and after exhortations vsed, he (as their head) commaunded them to

*Axalla over-
threw the Chi-
nois that kept
the wall of
partition,*

offer sacrifice vnto their Gods, of whom the Sunne is the principall commaunding in heauen, whom they hold opinion to be the chiefest cause of their being, accounting it immortall and impassible, moving it selfe onely for the benefit of liuing creatures, this did he command to be obserued thorough out all his Cities; and the second thing was, that euery one able to beare armes should mount on horsebacke, and come vnto the king at Paguinfou, whither he doubted that we would go, because it was one of the neerest townes vpon the borders. I haue forgotten to declare that this Lord who had the charge to conduct fiftie thousand men vnto the frōtiers at such time as they which were there had need thereof, was soone in a readinesse, and came to oppose himselfe against the Princes armie which entred, and beeing skilfull in the wayes of the countrey, troubled much the armie: for a great number of his men were on horsebacke. The Prince determined to beate downe all the wals the better to assure his returne, as also all the fortresses which were there vpon all the passages, all of them hauing yeelded theselues after his victorie, shewing himselfe very courteous vnto the people of these mountaines, he gaue vnto this Lord a small portion of land, wherein there be seuen or eight good townes, Archij, Ymulij, Faliquien, Fulij, Cohensen, Quialij, Pulij, Quianlu, who came and deliuered vp their keyes vnto him, being neighbours vnto this Lord, and gaue him the gouernement of the frontier prouince of Xianxij, shewing himselfe to be a Prince of his word, and acknowledging the notable seruices the which this Lord had done him. He referred the honouring of his brother vntill he had meanes to doe the same: all which mildenesse was of no small importance to fauour the conquest

*The Emperour
wonne the wals
of China.*

*The mountain
Lord rewar-
ded with great
gouernement.*

conquest of this countrey: for the people thereof are great wonderers, especially when as they see the curtesie of the men of warre, a thing which is altogether against their custome: for they are very cruell vnto their enemies ouer whom they haue the victorie, holding that of the Indians, who haue often entercourse with them. Now in our Prince there was not any thing noted but curtesie vnto the conquered, in somuch as this made him admired and honoured. Now the question being after all the fortes of the borders were beaten downe, to knowe what course the armie should take, the Prince had receiued newes, how that the king of China assembled his forces and marched forwardes, and that he was there in his owne person, and that he strengthened also his Cities which are sufficiently fortisied, and more then in any countrey adioyning vnto him, so as this caused the Prince to determine not to assault any strong citie, and to leaue any of them behinde him, this were a great discommoditie vnto him for the victualing of his armie: for to leaue the enemie behinde him, being assured to haue him on his front, this seemed to him nigh. Therfore vpon these doubts he thought good to haue the aduise of his Captaines, & hauing assembled the together, he propounded all these difficulties vnto them: in the end after sundry opinions, his resolution was, to leaue nothing behinde him, and to assault some famous citie, & take it, by meanes wherof he may nourish his armie, and secondarily call the enemie vnto batell. The which the conqueror should alwayes seeke, and the defender the latest he can hazard the same. For that it is a very doubtfull thing to commit themselues vnto a battell, his dutie being rather to delay, vndermining the conquerour by length, and by wearinesse, and

*The chinois
cruell vnto
their enemies.*

*A good adver-
tisement for
Generals.*

light skirmishes, then to fight in open field. For when a Generall hath wisely set his men in order, and hath exhorted them to performe their duties, what can hee do more then commit all vnto Fortune, and to the will of the Lord of Hosts? And it seemeth vnto me, that in no feates of armes doth fortune shew her trickes more often, then in the successe of battells, fauouring often the weakest, and deceiuing them sooner which trust in their skill of ouercomming. The examples thereof are verie common in the historie of the affaires of the world, where small armes haue ouercome innumerable numbers. I speake here by way of a preamble of things which you shall hereafter heare: and of the euill councell which the king of China receiued. Now for to returne againe vnto my historic, it was concluded, and the aduise of cuerrie one was, to conquer the countrie by litle and litle, so as their enterprise was to draw directly vnto *Paguinfou*, which as it was a great Citie and one of the chiefeſt, so is it also strongly fortifiſed and well replenifiſhed with people: but the Prince made account that the king of China would hazard a battell. Now the Prince before hee would cause the ſame to be ſummoned, had informed himſelfe well of the ſituation thereof, and cauſing all the countrie which is champion to be repreſented vnto his view, which are for the moſt part plaines, this increaſed the more his hope of bringing to good end his enterprise: the riches on the other ſide gaue courage vnto the ſouldiers, and principally vnto the Tar- tarians deſirous of ſpoyle, who carried with them cartes to conuey away their ſpoyles, *Paguinfou* be- ing accounted an exceeding rich and wealthie Ci- tie. Then he diſpatched *Odmar* with fourteene thou- sand

Warrs in Chi-
na made by
Tamerlan
with his wife
proceedings
therin.

sand horſe, to aduance forward and ſummon the ſame, as for to hinder victuals from being conueyed there- into out of the champion country: to the end that the cattell remayning in the fieldes, ſhoulde bee a meanes to maintaine and nouriſh his armie. I had forgotten to tell you, that for the acknowledging of the Lord *Axalla* his ſeruices, the Prince had made him Captaine generall of all his footemen, which was one of the principall honours of the armie. He caused the ſayd Lord *Axalla* to march after *Odmar*, with all the footmen, which was verie neere a hundred and fiftie thouſand men, well trayned vp in the warres, and good expert fighters. Hee marched himſelfe immediatly after with all his horſemen, ar- tilleries, engines, and other munitions belonging vnto warre, directly vnto *Paguinfou*. *Odmar* did ride twentie leagues this day, ſo as he arriued there con- trarie to their expectation, looking rather for the king then for the enemie, and hauiing taken much cattell, wherewith the countrie greatly aboundeth, he pitched his tents, leauing the citie betweene him and vs, and stayed for his footmen, who marched forwards in the meane ſpace, ſending continually vnto the warre, for to wearie the enemie. This endured three or four dayes, vntill our footmen ledde by this braue Christian Geneuois, ſhewed themſelues in the plaine of *Paguinfou*. Then the Citie was ſummoned to yeeld obe- dience vnto the Emperor, or else they ſhould receiue the law of the conquerour. They made anſwere, that they were determined to liue and die in the ſeruice of their Prince. Now you muſt understand that it was fortie yeares or thereabouts, ſince the Father of the king which raigneth at this preſent ouer the Chinois,

*Axalla made
Captaine gene-
rall of all the
footmen.*

had conquered it from the Empire of the Tartarians, and hauing driuen out all the inhabitants, they had planted therein newe Colonies, so thoroughly, that there were but few of the first remembrance, but onely they of the flat country and small walled townes, who came from all partes and brought their keyes, most willingly submitting themselues vnto the obedience of the Prince: so as there was great abundance of victuals within our armie: and if we had beene within our owne countrie, there could not haue come greater store; a thing which made our Prince hope for a happie successe, there beeing no other difficultie which for the most part can ouerthrow a great armie as ours was, and withdraw them from their enterprise. And thus the Citie of Paguinfou is besieged, and our footemen camped round about within an arrowes shot of all the walles. They within the citie did vse great endeuer for their defence, and our Prince omitted nothing for their offence. *Axalla* hauing viewed a great and strong suburbe, which was in length almost halfe a league, supposed that those of the Citie kept no watch there: that this must needes be, for that they would not make him obstinate; hee had a determination to winne it in the night, and hauing imparted it vnto the Prince, vpon the first watch all his men were readie, all of them hauing made prouision of ladders, and of such things as are necessary for winning thereof with handblowes, and hauing assaulted it on sundrie partes, after the fight had continued two houres, *Axalla* remained the conquerour, and cut in peeces eight thousand men at the least which were within the same: the spoile was great, there were many of *Axalla* his me slain of one side, which was that by the which they doubted

*The siege of
the citie of
Paguinfou.*

*A great sub-
urbe wonne by
Axalla in the
night.*

to be assaulted. But on the other side, by the which it was taken, there was scarce any one slaine. The taking of this suburbe did greatly astonish those of the Citie, who had marked the lustinesse of our men, and begannie to enter into doubt of their safetie, which vnto this day they accounted as most assured. On the other side they did see that the Princes promises to be there within fifteene daies fayled, they did see this great army which daily wanne footing, the engines and artillerie readie to offer violence on one side by them commaunded, the which did greatly annoy them, so as diuerse principall men of the Citie, desired rather to make triall of the conquerors clemencie, then of his rigor. But hee which commaunded within, who was one of the greatest Lords of the countrey, and one of the best beloved with the king, assured them of the kings approch, so as they should not want succour in time of necessitie: that there was no neede therof at this present, and although they had lost a suburbe, it should be great folly not to be willing to defend a citie, and their fortresses being as yet entire, that for his part, hee would make proofe of his fidelitie vnto his Prince, with the hazard of his life and goods. These words were of no small imporrance, and being vttered in the assenbly of the people, it caused their courages for to change, in such sort as euery one retired into his quarter, beeing resolued with the losse of their citie, to lose also their liues. Now you must vnderstand that the situation of the citie was of hard accessse, being seated vpon a plaine, the which was enuironed round about with mountaines, one of them only approaching the citie, which overlooked it on front vpon the North side, where was a valley by the which they passed, and there did runne a riuier: on this side was the

*The Gouvernors
speech vnto
those of the city
to stay them
from yeelding.*

*The situation
of the citie of
Paguinfou.*

suburbe situated which had beene taken, so as the meanes to succour the Citie was stopped, our souldiers keeping the passages of these Mountaines, the which were in the old time the borders of the kingdome: for Paguinfou was once gouerned by the Tartarians, which kept it for a defence against the Chinois, but had lost the same, and these mountaines were the limits of China against the foresaid Tartarians, who gouerned Paguinfou at that time, so as these mountaines were of hard accesse, and there remained no other way but on the side of the suburbe, the which a riuer compasseth about, running all along the side of a bordering mountaine, ypon the which we caused many bridges to be built, for to haue thereby a way for to succour our souldiers, which kept the passages of the mountaines on the enemies side: so as it could not be but hardly succoured, or else by a battell the which the Prince did earnestly desire, as all conquerors should do. I will declare also that during this time *Odmar, Calibes* and the Prince of Thanais were cōmanded often by the Prince to make warre, as well for to heare certaine newes of the enemie, as also for to maintaine his horsemen, and to keepe the place the which he had chosen as the field for the battell, to the end that he might liue there with his horsemen. He gaue also commandement vnto his men to gather together great store of victuals, so as they sacked many small townes, out of the which they brought a great quantitie. In this meane time the king of Chinaes armie approached (euen like faire wea-
ther) the which was very great, as they brought vs word dayly, the Prince determining to go in person & meete with the enemy, accōpanied with his principall horsemen, and to leaue the greatest part of his footmen at the

siege

siege, wherunto he had a great desire, omitting nothing that might wearie the besieged, who defended themselfes couragiously. So the Prince began to batter, cau-
The siege of
Paguinfou. sing his engines to approch, as rammes and other munitions, the which he had made for to come neere vnto the walles, to the end they might come to hand-blowes with the enemies: insomuch as the Citie was assaulted on two sides very coragiously. They within began to be more affeard then before, there beeing set vp for the safegard of the munitions, and of a wall which was fallen down, a Caualier raised vp very high within an arrowshot, which did greatly annoy them, so as they were constrained to forsake the wall in the day, and this caused them to begin a trench for to couer themselfes, the which was 22. foote in height, and as much in depth, and fiftie foot in bredth; the which being declared vnto our men, they determined to trie their fortunes, and to giue thē an assault before they had ended the same, or at the least to win the wall, & lodge there at the instant. So the Prince sent for *Axalla*, who was in his own quarter, this affaire depending vpon his charge, and hauing by his industrie ordered in a manner all the siege, and hauing acquainted him with his pleasure, commanded him to execute it. The next day putting his mē in order they assalted the wall, the which was valiantly defended: but in the end through the valor of *Axalla* who gaue an assalt with 20000. of his best souldiers, he won the wall, & lodged there, the Prince hauing so cōmanded him to do, to stop the heat of the soldiers frō going any further. Now the Princes purpose was to cōpound for the citie, & not to force it, for two reasons. The first was, for that he feared, the citie being great and rich, that when the souldiers should sacking it, the enemie who was but

The citie of
Paguinfor
yielded vnto
Tamerlan vp
on the death of
their Gouvernor

thirtie leagues from thence, shold come vpon them, and by this meanes his army shold be found in disorder, also rich souldiers neuer serue well: The other was, for that he would draw out of that citie which was rich and wealthie, those commodities which were necessary for the sure accomplishing of his enterprise, seeing it was necessarie to haue such a citie for to make a storehouse of necessarie things for the army. Thus although the wall was won, the enemies wanted not courage yet to defend themselues valiantly, looking for aide according to the newes they had receiued, that the kings army marched forward. Whilest these things were in doing, one of our engines shooting a bullet, and hauing ouerthrown a peece of Anuber, the same did hurt the Gouernour, who at the end of three or foure houres yeelded vp the ghost, the which caused the souldiers to change their resolution, there being none which made them obstinate but he, so as they determined before the Prince shold be aduertised of the losse of their head, & especially of the great slaughter of men which they had lost in the fight of the wall, all of them with one cosent did resolute for to yeelde themselues vnto the Princes mercie, sauing their liues, and the souldiers enjoying their horse and weapons. Now I haue forgotten to declare how this assault had alreadie endured the space of eight dayes; such delay did greatly vexe the Prince, and on the other side, the king of China made no great hast, but at such time as he vnderstood of the Gouernour his death, doubting of that which happened. The Prince then who was aduertised that the enemies army marched vnto a batel, was very glad of these news, the which Axalla, who was aduanced vpon the walles, had declared vnto him, and brought the Embassadours

vnto

vnto the Prince, who received them verie curteouslie, assuring them on the one side of his gentlenesse, and on the other of the power he had to punish their disobedience. The conditions were agreed vpon, and there came out of the citie eighteen thousand souldiers, the inhabitants remaining in a maner all there in thirtie thousand soldiers at the beginning: the siege cōtinued two moneths. Now the king of China in his marching received newes of the yeelding vp thereof: he caused the Lieutenant of the late Gouernour to be punished, and many of the Captaines, but pardoned the souldiers: he stayed in that place attēding for our marching forward, which could not bee before eight daies after he had taken order about this newe cōquest, the which was necessarie for him to settle before hee proceeded any further. Our Prince caused a master to be made of his souldiers hauing encreased their payes, and contented euery one according to his desertes. The honour of taking the citie and the happie successe therein was attributed vnto Axalla, to whom was giuen the government of the citie with the country alreadie conquered. But he beseeched the Prince that it would please him to bestow it vpon some other, and for himself he referred the hope of his master, wherein he shold haue part. This answere did greatly content the Prince, for he greatly desired the seruice of Axalla, for that he was a Captaine, who besides his valour, had great practise in the knowledge of Armes, and full of inuention, but principally at such time as the question was for the besieging of any place. The Prince offering it vnto him rather to acknowledge his seruice done vnto him, then for any desire hee had to employ him in any other place then about his person.

Reward for
deserts.

Axalla skilfull
in besieging of
Cities.

Vpon his refusall this charge was bestowed vpon the Prince of Thanais, with the title of Viceroy. Now as I haue already told you, our Prince after he had giuen such order as was necessarie, and aduertised his friendes in all partes, and aboue all the Emperour, he marched forward, hauing contented his souldiers, and made a generall muster of his Armie, as well of the horse as footmen, the which hee found to be diminished of tenne thousand men onely. Nowe our Prince after he had solemnlie called vpon the immortall, inuincible, and incomprehensible God, and spent one whole day in prayer, we enterprised to goe on forward, and to go directlie vnto the enemie, who was at *Sintehn*, with all his owne forces, and of all his Allies. As soone as he receiued newes that our Armie was passed ouer the riuier of *Chulifn*, it is reported that barbarouslie he caused to be published throughout all his Campe, that euerie one should prepare himselfe vnto the Battaile, for that he was determined to stay no longer for the enemie within his owne countrie, because hee could not endure to see his subiectes spoyled any longer. But certainlie he made it manifestlie appeare, how his mischiefe and euill fortune followed him too neare, euen at the verie heeles: for if that hee had drawne out the warre in length, he had gotten a great aduantage of vs, hauing manie strong Cities, the which we must needs haue assaulted, and had bene sufficient to ouerthrow vs vitterlie, and after he might haue had a good bargaine of vs. For the wisedome of our Prince would not endure to leaue any thing behind him which might hinder vs from victuals: for great Armies cannot otherwise be maintained. Our Prince was wont to say vnto his

famili-

Tamerlan his
godlynes.

familiars (for he neuer boasted himself, and at such time as fortune was most fauourable vnto him, then had he most doubt) that if the king of China were so euill aduised as to offer him battaile, hee should commit a follie whereof he would repent him, being well assured that he had braue Captaines, and souldiers well experienced in the warres, who knewe well what belonged vnto battailes. Now the king of China marched directlie vnto vs with great magnificencie: there was nothing to be seene but gold and precious stones in his Armie: he himselfe was commonlie in a chariot, wherein there was such a quantitie of golde and rich stones, that euerie part was full of Diamonds, Rubies, and Pearles. The king of China was of the age of three and thirtie yeares, vwho for the most part had bene brought vp in pleasures, and not in militarie exercises, nor vnder the bloudy ensigne of Mars, loaden with yron, boisterous and furious, not with gold, precions stones, and with such kinde of riches: so as he was very insolent in thretnings, brauadoes, and in defying vnto the battaile. He often said that we had surprised him, and had not warned him to prepare himself, and that we had stroken him without speaking any word: for this is the custome of the people in those parts, to do in this maner. He had two or thre kings also with him, his neighbours and Allies, who marched with the same preparation. Therumour of these riches gaue great courage to the soldiers, for they were couetous of iust gain, as is that gotten by a battaile. So both our armies went forward each to approch the other, & there was a city yeelded vnto the Prince called *Tumtchenoy*, the which helped our Armie greatly, so as the Prince hauing well marked the situation of the

*The king of
China his mag-
nificencie.*

*The custome
of the Chinese.*

The proceeding
of Tamerlan's army
towards the en-
emie.

Camp, found it to be much for his aduantage, and the waters and pastures in great abundance, in so much as we determined abiding in that place to behold the enemies countenance, who if he were so rash as to set vpon him at all aduenture, this place seemed vnto him verie conuenient to teach him a newe lesson in. The next day to the end we might giue occasion vnto the enemie for to approch nearer, we sent to summon, and at the same time to take possession of the citie of *Pannihu*, the which in aduancing forward we left a little behind vs. The king of China had put manie men thereinto, and it was a citie sufficiently well fortisied: from *Tiaucheuoy* to *Paguinhu* there were ten leagues. It vexed the Prince greatlie, that in retynning directlie vnto *Pannihu* he should turne his backe vnto the enemie. This was the occasion he went to content himself with this inuesting onely, for two reasons; the one to cause the enemie the sooner to approch: the other for to hinder the incursions which the might make: but it fell out much otherwise, for this matter was no sooner put in deliberation, but that *Odmar* who had bene at the warre brought certaine newes that the enemies Armie was within a dayes journey of vs, and that the battaile in his opinion would bee the next day. The Prince foorthwith dispatched one vnto *Calibes*, who was gone thither with 10000. horse, that hee should come vnto him, and in the meane time made prouision of all thinges necessarie wherewith he might prewaile for obtaining of the victorie: So he aduanced his Army within a league of the citie *Tiaucheuoy*, about noone the next day they had more certaine aduertisement of the enemies comming. The Prince who had as merrie a countenance as might bee, after he had com-

commanded his Armie to take the place for the Battaille, which he had chosen in his iudgement with most aduantage, and hauing set downe vnto *Odmar* the order he would haue to be obserued, hee desired to see the comming of this Armie: so sending before him fise or sixe thousand horse as scouts, he aduanced forward, and *Calibes* with him. Now there were two causes wherefore hee marched the foremost; the one was, for that he wold iudge of his enemies countenace; the other, he hoped to draw him to fight in his place of battaile the which he had chosen, and to deale in such sort as the enemie might be the assailant. So after he had seene this great confused Armie which continually came forward, he commanded *Calibes* to retire himselfe as soone as they drew neere vnto him, and bring vnto him this great cloud, the which he hoped soon to disperse. So the Prince returned backe vnto his men for to assure them of the battaile: he caused all his footmen to be placed all along by a great mountaine, so as they had but one head for to doubt. And hee planted great store of Artillerie for the guard of his footmen. I am of opinion, that the Prince had about sixe score thousand footmen, whereof many were armed after the Christian maner, and all they were commanded by sundry Captaines; but all obeyed *Axalla*, who comman-
The order of
the Princes
battaile a-
gainst the king
of China.ded them as Generall. Our horsmen were in battaile array in a great leuell plaine, hauing the footmen on the left hand, and on the right was the comming of the enemie, so as vpon the least disfauour that might happen, he would retire to be assisted by his footmen. We had foure-score thousand horse: *Calibes* with the Scythians were in the Avantguard, and had the commandement of thirtie thousand horse, who should receive

him at such time as he did drawe on the enemie, as he was cōmatidē. It was deuided into three troupes, each one consisting of 10000. *Odmar* had also 30000. horse who should assist him. The Prince remained in the Arier-ward at the one of the wings of his footmen, which held one of his principall forces, his purpose was to suffer the three-score and sixe thousand horse to maihtain the fight against the Barbariās, being led by two good Captaines, and if any of them remained the Emperor hoped after of them to haue a good market, by causing his footmen to march forward, and himselfe with whō there abode twenty thousand of the best horse, which were sufficiēt without hazarding his person for to giue a new battaile, if so be that any disfauor should happen vnto them: for he had vnderstood that this was the custome of the kings of China, to enclose theselues within the middest of their chariots with their footmen, and not to hazard themselues but vpon the extremity: so the enemie failed nothing at all to march directlie vnto *Calibes*, and all the Army marched after following of him and setting vpon him, and he euē as the Scithians are alwayes accustomed to do, with his 6000. horse in retiring gaue manie charges, killing some of them, and they likewise killing some of his men. It was a beautifull sight to see this great Armie march, for it seemed to be twise as great as ours, therein being an infinite number of armed chariots, wherein he put his principall trust against the furie of our souldiers; so manie gildings of gold and siluer as well in the trapplings of their horses, as on their armor, that it glittred, and was of vs all much admired. The Prince who with a troupe of horse did see the Armie march after *Calibes*, commended greatly the maner of casting their men

The beautie & richness of the king of China's Army.

men out of the rarkes, for to compell this troupe vnto fight, & did see this Armie come in good order, & he tried with his eye to note the place wher the kings person was, hauing near him the Chinois Lord to instruct him, who knew well their maner of fighting. Nowe they had neither auant-guard nor battaile, but only an Arier-ward commanded by the king, and inclosed (as I haue said) with his chariots: the which being shewed vnto him by this Lord, the Prince turned himselfe vnto vs, and in our language said: Yet must wee this day disperse this cloud here so gilded, & the king of China and my selfe must make a partition thereof. Now hauing scene the enemie sufficiētly aduanced, & iudging that he had had scene them march a good league, he thought it not conuenient to suffer them for to take breath, nor for to put themselues againe into their order; he sent vnto *Calibes* for to wil him to set forward the fight, and that if those whom he had led with him should be weary, they should come vnto him; but it was not in *Calibes* power to haue this commandement ouer them. For as soone as they heard this word of fighting vttered, they required the first charge, with a young Lord, who commanded ouer them called *Ziocabanes*, who made appeare vnto the Chinois to what end their flight was, charging verie stiffly vpon the foremost of the enemis, the which was an occasion to to begin the first fight. And I assure you there could not be scene a more furious thing, nor any for to fight with more desire to manifest the valor of his nation, & for to procure honor vnto his Prince. Now this endured a long houre before the Chinois had ouerthrown *Calibes*. The Prince did see all pacientlie, saying alwaies, that the great multitude how confused so ever it were,

*Tamerlan his
speech of the
king of China.*

The battaile
between the
King of China
and Tamerlan

would carrie it away from the order and valour of his
souldiers: you could not yet perceiue any alteration in
the Princes countenance, aduersitie and prosperitie
were so indifferent vnto him. Now his thirtie thousand
horse were all Scithians, who obserue not the same or-
der the Parthians doe. Now before the Prince retired
with his men, he did see the first charge giuen. *Calibes*
being wounded, retired himself neere vnto the Prince,
hauing with him two thousand horse ioyned together
againe, and many more ioyning themselues together
neere vnto the Prince, who commaunded that they
should cure *Calibes*, viewing the place of his wound, he
caused him to be conducted behind his footmen, and
the other which were hurt with him also. Now *Calibes*
was not able to pierce through this Armie, being bea-
ten back; but *Odmar* with almost all the Parthian hors-
men did handle them more roughly, for he ran cleane
through them, and returned by one of the right wings
of the Armie, where he fought most valiantlie, and ha-
uing beaten them back euē within the kings chariots,
hee thought that hee should not doe wisely to go a-
bout to breake such forces. The King of China com-
ming forward, and the horsmen which had bene bro-
ken by *Odmar* ioyning themselues together for his aid,
Odmar onely remayning in the Battaile sent vnto the
Prince for the footme, and for to set forward the arti-
llerie, and that he should assure himselfe of the victory.
The Prince who had already set forward, kept aloofe
off, and sent vnto him fiftie thousand footmen, with a
part of the artillerie, giuing charge therof vnto *Axalla*,
who forthwith set forward, hauing commandement
to set vpon the chariots, and to make an entrance: hee
set forward the artillerie before him, the which did
greatly

greatlie astonish the enemies: for the gouernors of the
horses belonging to the kinges chariots could not hold
them; it made also a great spoile. As soone as hee per-
ceiued this disorder, he set forward, and came to hand-
blowes; there were a hundred & fifty thousand men as yet
about the kings person. *Axalla* full of courage fought
so valiantly, that they never beheld any do more brane-
ly. *Odmar* during this fight charged again the horsmen
who were retired vnto the kings aide, whom he put to
flight. Then the Prince aduanced forward with the rest
of his footmen, gaue aide vnto *Axalla*, and came even
vnto the person of the king of China, who was as yet
enclosed within a second ranke of Chariots with thir-
tie or fortie thousand men: and after hee had fought
two or three houres, the horsmen assisting the foot-
men, and they principally whom the Prince had refer-
red, the king remained wounded within the power of
the Prince, the battaile being won, and all the enemies
Campe forced; the fight indured eight houres, and it
was even night which sau'd the liues of many of the
enemies. There were slaine two kings the Allies of the
king of China, and one taken prisoner: there was in-
estimable riches gotten, as wel in golden vessel as preci-
ous stones, and the most rich and faire chariots that
could be seene. The Prince would not see the capti-
ued king vntill the next day, being mounted on horse-
backe, and passing through the Campe of the battaile
for to stay the slaughter, and to ioyn together againe
his men, to the end the accustomed watch might bee
kept, whereof he gaue the charge vnto *Axalla*; to
whom he gaue likewise commandement to keepe the
king of China within the middest of his souldiers, ha-
uing bene already dressed of a wound he had received

The king of
China wound-
ed and taken
prisoner.

Tamerlan's
victory over
the king of
China.

The custody of
the king of Chi-
na delivered
vnto Axalla.

A great daugh-
ter of the
Chinian,
Tamerlan
thankful vnto
God for his
storie.

Calibes woun-
ded.

in his right arme. It was a strange thing to behold the enemies weapons, and the diuersty of streamers wherwith they were decked, the which seemed vnto vs a far off as beautifull, as the diuersitie of colours plentifull. But to say the truth, the multitude was great which this king had, notwithstanding there was much difference betweene their valour and ours: and it is reported, that he had ranged in battaile this verie day three huidred and fiftie thousand men, whereof there were an hundred and fiftie thousand horsmen, the rest on foote: the greatest part of them were rude and barbarous people, which suffered themselues to bee slaine one vpon another, not marking their aduantage, nor hauing anie warlike knowledge, as our men haue: there were slain of the enemies some threescore thousand. Now the next day after the buriall of the dead, the Prince hauing giuen thankes vnto God for his victorie, caused the wounded to be cured, and amongst the others *Calibes*, who by reason of the vntemperatenesse of the aire, rather then by the blow of the wound he had receiued, found himselfe verie ill, yet would he not omit his dutie, to commaund alwaies his Auant-guard, the which was a great pleasure vnto the Prince, for he alone had commandement ouer the Emperours forces, being a Scithian, and greatly beloued of his nation. The Prince dispatched away thirtie thousand horse in the pursuit of one of the king of Chinas brothers, who was fled away, hauing ioyned together againe some twelue or fifteene thousand horse. The Prince sent to summon *Pannihu*, the which did yeeld it selfe vnto him: whereupon our Armie approached neare vnto it, for to aduance our felues the further into the countrie. Nowe I forget to declare

clare howe the Prince hauing the next day caused his tentes to bee pitched most stately, and his guardes ordered according to his greatnessse, the principall of his Armie being also neare his person, for all the night he had remained continually on horsebacke, vntill about two of the clocke, when as they brought him a tart and his water, for he neuer dranke wine, and lay downe vpon a carpet, where he passed the rest of the night, I was neere vnto him and neuer left him: but I neuer heard anie vaunting or boasting to proceed out of his mouth, but much bewailed the follie of this king, which would not deliuer vp that belonged vnto him, and said vnto *Odmar*, who was neare vnto him, that his God had led him by the hand, and had giuen vnto him a great victorie, without the losse of anie of his seruants, at the least of them which were of marke: that hee could not but lament for all those whom hee had lost, accounting them notwithstanding most happie and blessed, dying in the seruice of their king, against such cruell and barbarous people. So then hee sent a commaundement vnto *Axalla*, for to bring vnto him the imprisoned king: who being come, *The coming* of the king of China prisoner vnto the Emper Tamerlan, issued out of his tents, and went to receive him. This king of China came with a verie proud and haughtie countenance, and like a courageous man, approaching neare vnto the Emperour, hee demaunded of *Axalla* by an interpreter, which was the Emperour, and being shewed him, hee spake fiercely vnto him after this manner: The goddes whom I worship, being prouoked against my nation & people, and conspired against my good fortune, haue made mee at this day thy prisoner: but forasmuch as it is reported ouer all the worlde, that *Tamerlan*

maketh warre for the honor of his nation: thou shouldest be contented that thou hast wonne it this glorie, that the Lord of the world, the child of the Sunne, is in thy power, to receiue such law as it shall please thee to prescribe him. This he said in a braue manner, and without any other humbling of himselfe. The Emperour on the other side hauing saluted him verie courteouslie, led him into his tent, & willed his interpreter to say vnto him; that euerie diuiniyt fained or true, which anie do worship and reuerence, that certainly an euill matter is alwayes disagreeable vnto them, and that he yeelded willinglie vnto the immortall, invincible, and incomprehensible God (whom hee worshipped) this honor, to attribute vnto him this victorie obtained, euen as he did the cause of his euil fortune vnto his false gods whom he worshipped; that he might assure himselfe to finde all gentlenesse and good entertainment at his hands. So hauing made a signe that hee allowed of that the Prince said, with thāks vnto him, the Prince remained a certaine space after without speaking, hauing placed him neare vnto himselfe, not contenting himselfe in beholding this Princes behauour. He caused his interpreter to demād of him, what he did think of the fashion obserued by his people in fighting. He answered, that he accounted the victorie most assured, when as he did see so few men come against him, in comparison of the great Army that hee had; but that the gods had otherwise disposed thereof. When he asked whether his brother were a prisoner or slaine: hee was demanded whether he fought neare vnto him. He answered, that he commanded ouer his horsmen, and that hee wore the same royll garmentes that hee himselfe did. They tolde him, that he was taken. Wherupon he

*Tamerlan his
princely enter-
tainment and
godly speech
uttered vnto
the prisoner
King of China.*

he fetched a great sigh, and being demanded wherfore he was sorie that his brother should bee with him and run the same fortune: he answered that all his hope of comforting himselfe in this mishap was placed in his brother, and all the good happe also of the Chinois name, therefore he greatlie lamented him, commending much the courage of his brother. Now the Prince knew of certaine that he was escaped away, and therfore (as I haue said) was *Odmar* gone to hinder his re-uniting together. I haue forgotten to declare how the riches which were gotten were innumerable: for the meanest amongst them had much gold about him, & vpon the trappings of their horse. The Lords had such store of precious stones, as of nothing more. They did bring all the prisoners before the Prince, and when the two Allies of the king of China did come, the king rose vp and did them great reuerence. Then the Prince demanded of him by an interpreter, who they were. He answered him, that they were his Allies, and that he lamented more their fortune then his owne, and that he would die with them. Now this barbarous king thought the matter should be handled after their manner, when as they put to death their prisoners, and feed of meat made of them, as some of those countries are accustomed to doe. Nowe the Prince hauing received them courteouslie, did assure them of good entertainment: for the which the king of China did shewe himselfe greatly contented. The one of them was the king of Chiampa, the other of Canchuichina, vnder-vassals and tributaries to the king of China. Nowe he was of the age of thirtie yeares; hee had a long vi-sage, his eyes blacke and great, his beard long, the which he stroaked often, his nose was of a reaона-

*The cruel cu-
stome of the
Chinois.*

*A description
of the king of
china.*

*A description
of China.*

ble bignesse, hauing a graue behauour, and well be-seeming a great king. These prisoner-kings did as it were worship in saluting of him, and hee keeping his grauitie, only commadred them to rise frō the ground. He is surely a great Prince, and which hath had two hundred famous Cities within his kingdome. There be manie mynes of gold and siluer, much muske, and also of an hearbe which the Christians call Rubarbe. There bee in like maner within the kingdome of China fifteene verie large Prouinces, the which haue Gouerners. It is reported that he hath threesore and ten kings wearing crownes, tributaries vnto him. We call this region China, the which they in their language name *Tame*, and the people *Tangis*, the which we call Chinois. This kingdome doth abound in fish, and in great numbers of wilde-foule, by reason of the great abundance of running waters which doe ouerflowe the countrie, the which is reasonable temperate: they abound greatly in silkes, and the meanest are apparelled therewith, hauing small quantitie of woll, and not vsing the same: they haue much cotten and linnen in steed thereof. The men do weare their haire long, the women combe them: they haue as many wiues as they are able to maintaine. Next vnto the king, there is a Gouernor generall whom they call *Tutan*, the which was the brother vnto the imprisoned king. This is the cause wherefore he must not forfase the countrie: but he requested his brother to accompanie him vnto this Battaile, where they thought assuredlie to ouercome, and was so wilfull, that he did appoint a Lord in his place, vpon whom the king of China did not relie so much as vpon his brother: in so much as this made him sad, considering the follie which he had committed,

ted, in suffering him to come with him, and to be both of them at one battaile. Now for to returne vnto the king of China: the Prince hauing assembled his counsell, to the end he might be aduised how he should vse his prisoners and the rest of the victorie: hee received newes by *Odmar*, how that the kings brother was arriued at *Quantou*, the which hee had fortified, and that great store of forces did ioyne themselues vnto him. This was the cause that the Prince hauing somewhat rested his forces, commauded two thousand Parthian horse to contey the prisoners vnto *Pagin-fou*, and from thence after they had made abode there, to passe ouer the mountaines, and to remaine at *Burda* (a Citie of olde time faithfull vnto the Emperors of Scithia) and there to keepe them faithfully. This charge was giuen vnto *Malaxen* Lieutenant generall in the charge of *Axalla*. Then the Prince made dispatches vnto the Emperour, and to his Lieutenant ouer the Parthians, and made them partakers of this great and happie victorie, wherein had bene slaine so manie thousandes of the enemies, and hee had lost so fewe of his owne. I returne vnto the deliberation which the Prince tooke (after that hee had discharged himselfe of much carriages, the which hee had sent with the king of China,) before hee would goe anie further forward. Nowe hee had also sent to hasten the fortie thousand footmen which should come from *Sachetay*, and thirtie thousand Scithian horse, making his account that they should haue come vnto him, before the forces of the king of China could oppose themselues against him. So the purpose and resolution of the Prince was, that it behouued to assault *Quasson*, and to shut vp, if it were

*Th: proce-
dings of the
Emperors Ar-
mie after the
victory, & his
resolution in
the same.*

possible, the kinges brother within the same, being one of the principall seates belonging vnto the king of China, and a citie greatly peopled and strong: it was fortie leagues from the place where the battaile was fought. But *Odmar* being aduanced thither, would not retire before hee had expresse commandement from the Prince, who hauing sent thither, pitched his tentes round about the said Citie: hauing summoned many small cities, the which yeelded themselues wholly vnto the Princes mercie, making great lamentation for their king taken, and for the estate of their affaires, the abasement being verie great throughout all the kingdome, for all the diligence the king of Chinas brother could vse for the quieting of their astonisched mindes, and to exhort euerie one to take new courage. Notwithstanding the gentlenesse vsed by the Conquerour made them to take all their losses with patience: and because it was also reported, that hee had vsed the king most friendlie, and all the prisoners: for the Prince cause his clemencie to bee published vnto all that would vouchsafe to cast themselues into his armes, as he would also shewe his sharppesse vnto all those which disobeyed him, and woulld withstand his commandementes. For it was the Princes custome to pardon the humble, and to punish the proud throughlie, knowing that reward and punishment are the thinges which doe greatlie increase estates. And Princes must learne this as a generall rule, that whensoeuer they vse those which are rebels vnto them, as those that are obedient, they shall receive hurt thereby, because euerie one will take libertie of ill doing, seeing that the one and the other are equallie weighed and regarded by the Prince, who ought

to

to be a iust iudge and moderatour of euerie ones de-serts. Now our Prince had besides another maxime, that is, he straightly kept that which hee promisid, al-though his estate depended therupon, if his word were once passed. And you must beleue, that none of his seruants durst be so bold, as to make request and speake to the contrarie, so as this same being spread amongst the barbarous people, they were assured when they had once his word: now you must know that this is of no small importance vnto a victorious Prince, to make his victorie perfect. But to returne vnto my purpose, our Prince hauing caused praiers to be celebrated, and yeelded thanks vnto God for his victory, as his custom was, he caused money to be distributed vnto the Captaines for the cure of them which were wounded. He went directly vnto Quantou, hauing giuen commandement vnto *Odmar* to go eu'en beyond Quantou, to the end that the kings brother should not put any greater forces thereinto; and if it fell out so, he should not faile to fight with them and hinder them from the same, for his purpose was to besiege it. I will not forget to declare how the kings brother had sent Embassadors to obtain leaue for to know of the kings health, and for to see him, the which the Prince did willingly suffer, to the end this other should not declare himselfe king, who would haue brought him more trouble then the other. He attened for the euent of Quantou, and had his eyevpon the successe of this siege. Now the kings brother hauing receiued newes of the affaires of the besieged, he determined (hauing receiued aide from some of his confederates, and also as soone as he had ioyned to-ther his forces) either to succour it, or to fight a battell, and came straight vnto Porchio, hoping he might make

*Tamerlan
straightly obser-
ved his pro-
mise, and kept
his word truly.*

*Embassadours
sent from the
kings brother
of China, vnto
Tamerlan to
visite the king.*

a bridge of boates whereof there be great store in these same countries. The Prince vnderstanding this, caused a trench to be made at the ende of the bridge, for to keepe it against the enemies: there did he place three or foure thousand men, to the end the bridge might alwaies be at his commaundement, and as he did perceiue the enemie approch, hee shewed himselfe in battell ray all along the riuier. This passe-time continued tenne or twelue dayes, vntill such time as the kings brother hauing caused a great number of boates to be gathered together, had made a bridge in a verie narrowe place of the riuier: whereof the Prince being aduertised, he made no shew he knewe it, keeping himselfe within his Campe, from whence the said place was some tenne leagues from vs, called Cambin. Then our scoutes brought vs word that the bridge was made, presently thereupon the Prince commaunded *Odmar* to mount on horsebacke with fifteene thousand horsemen, and that he should suddenly set vpon all those that were passed over, and sent all his footemen after him; we set forward all our horsemen after, the which the Emperour himselfe did cōduct, hauing left a sufficient strength within Rochio. The Prince hauing considered the time of the diligence the which the kings brother might vse in passing ouer his armie, together with the aduertisement which he had receiued, made him accordingly aduāce his army, so as we departing at midnight came thither by noone, and *Odmar* halfe an houre before vs, in so much as he hauing marked that there were no more of them passed ouer then he was appointed to charge, he staied in hope that halfe of them would passe ouer, and also he looked for the Prince, who did set forward, being

behind

behind the mountaines, which were within a league of that place, causing soime to descrie from houre to houre what the enemie did. Now beeing enformed that the halfe part were passed, the which was fiftie thousand men good, he aduertised the Prince thereof, and went himselfe vnto the fight, and finding them in very ill order, and nothing at all aduertised of the enemie nearenesse, he gaue the charge, and vtterly ouerthrew them; there remained dead vpon the ground some fiftie thousand men; but it was not without great fight, strengthened with the fauour of the water, and a great Marrish wherein they were encamped. Notwithstanding our footemen hauing wonne the banke of the riuier, beganne also to winne the boates and to leuer them by the meanes of a great boate the which wee with diligence caused to runne downe being full of artificiall fire, so as at the same *A stratagem.* very time that they which were within the boate did drawe neare, they retired out of the same, hauing first kindled the fire within the boate, the which with a great force rushed against the bridge of boates and ouerthrew it, and where it was refisted did burne. This did greatly astonish them that were passed, to see their returne cut off. The kings brother was not yet passed vnto the other side of the water, and he which first had gone ouer was the king of *Cauchina*, who was slaine at the first charge fighting very valiantly, in the forefront. The kings brother did see his men slain and drowned, & could not remedie the same. This second ouerthrow was of no small importance, although it was but the third part of the kings brothers armie, and that there remained vnto him as yet a hundred thousand fighting men: but there was no great hope that bee durst

Odmar set vpon the kings brother at the passing of a riuier, and slew fiftie thousand men.

The king of Cauchina slain

present himselfe before our armie. The newes hereof being reported at Quantioufou, the Prince was of opinion that one should carrie thither the king of Cauchinas head, for he was one of the kings greatest vassals, thereby to assure them of the victorie, and that they should not hope for any succor. On the other side, they did see *Axalla* who pressed them verie neere, and what endeouer soeuer they made, yet did they marke that daily they lost their honour, and that by little and little they approched neerer vnto the, in such sort that these 15. dayes they had beene continually at hand-blowes with our men. In the end they gaue knowledge vnto *Axalla*, that they desired to make triall of the Emperours clemencie. Answere was made vnto them, that they had better occasiō to trust vnto the Princes mercie at this present, then vnto their owne forces: and hauing by interpreters long time discoursed with *Axalla*, they demanded eight daies respit, wherin they might aduertise the kings brother of the estate of their affaires: and that if they were not succoured within fifteene dayes, they promised to yeeld theselues, so as it would please the Prince, to keepe them in the same fidelitie that the kings of China had kept and maintained them. *Axalla* made answere, that he had charge from the Prince to receiue them vpon cōposition, and to make them prove all gentlenesse as soone as they had yeelded vnto his mercie: but for preuenting of so long delay, for that the Prince was in person within the countrie, he would fende and impart this vnto him, and beseech him for the same: and attending therfore, they should in the meantime deliuer hostages for this purpose, and that from this time forward he did graunt them truce, vntill the Prince had signified therein his pleasure. Thereupon

Axalla

Axalla dispatched one of his faithfull friends of his countrie vnto the Prince, to carrie vnto him these good newes: the which was more welcome vnto the Prince, then the ouerthrow he had giuen vnto the enemie, and agreed vnto all that *Axalla* demaunded, referring all vnto his sufficiencie and fidelitie, and relying thereupon he would marke what the kings brother meant to do. After this last disgrace he was determined, if the enemie did not retire, to passe ouer the riuver, and to pursue him euē vnto the sea coastes. Three or foure dayes being spent the Prince tooke aduise for to passe ouer the riuver with his horsemen, but not to aduance any further then 3. or 4. leagues beyond the water: onely he meant to hinder the kings brother from attayning vnto the riuers foord, hauing receiued aduertisement that he would passe ouer for to succour *Quantoufou*. As soone as the enemie vnderstood newes of the passing ouer of our army, it did greatly astonish him, & therevpon retired ten great leagues frō vs, bending towards the sea side into a hillie countrie, and vncasie for our horsemen, where he thought to find place of securitie for his armie, and where the same might be intrenched within the mountaines. And there at leasure he tooke aduise of the greatest about him, to determine what offers they might make vnto the Emperour, as well for the kings ransome, as also for to assure that which yet remained, & for to make a peace, the which must needs be had, were it by gold or siluer, seeing that bloud could doe no good therein, which had not beene spared: that there was no more to be done, and that the goddes were offended. Therfore it behoued with them to acknowledge *Tamerlan*, they for to fauour him, and we to serue him: and hauing sent to demaund safetie for to

The citie of
Quantoufou
yelded into
the hands of
Axalla, who
besiged the
same.

Axalla his en-
trance into
Quantoufou
with great
magnificence.

treat, the Prince graunted so much vnto them, for such as would come vnto him. In this meane time *Quantoufou* yelded it selfe into the hands of *Axalla*, who caused the garrison to come out of the same, received the inhabitants into the Princes protection, and they which would might remaine therein vnarmed: and he entred therewith to the ioy of all the inhabitants, who did determine to receiue the Emperor into the same with all the magnificence that might be. He caused 30000. men of war to enter therewith, vnto whom was money deliuered for to maintain the same, vntill such time as all the footmen shold receiue pay for 3. moneths due vnto them, whereof the inhabitants of *Quantoufou* did furnish the Prince, to the summe of eight hundred thousand Tentins, the which do amount vnto foure hundred and fifty thousand crownes or therabout. The Prince at this present sent me vnto *Axalla*, whom I found feasting of his Captaines and souldiers, staying for the cōmandement that I brought vnto him, the which was to remaine within *Quantoufou*, and to cause all his footmen to set forward directly vnto him, the which was done by the Prince, to the end it should strike a greater terror into the minds of the enemies, who seeing all his footmen arrived, he supposed they would nothing doubt (*Quantoufou* being taken) but that he would march forward, insomuch as he hoped this would greatly aduance his affaires, considering the estate they were in. I returned from *Quantoufou* vnto the Emperour, having seene a beautifull and great Citie, well fortifyed, and wonderfully peopled, and round about it there was a fruitfull countrey. Our armie had beene two monethes and a halfe before it, and I thinke we shoud haue continued there one monethes longer: for therein

was

was no want of any thing but of men, because many of them had beene slaine since the siege beganne. This was the cause wherefore the Princes brother would haue conducted somethither, & was the occasion that made him aduance forward. Many of our men were also dead by reason of the intemperatenesse of the aire, and the heat of sommer the which we had passed, wherwith our men had not bin accustomed: so as those souldiers which we looked for were necessarie for vs to aduance forward, if wee purposed to attempt any other thing. *Axalla* who remained therein, employed all the paines he possibly could, to repaire the walles, and to winne the inhabitants good will vnto the Prince: for not one of them was departed with the Gouernour for to serue the king of China, he leading with him out of the citie, but thirteene thousand, of thirtie thousand souldiers, some beeing dead, the other remaining with the inhabitants vnarmed, for to receiue the law of the conquerour. It was a thing very worthie the noting of their new Lord, who was to command them, to marke so great lightnesse and inconstancie in forgetting so soone him which had maintayned them, he and his auncestors by the space of two hundred yeares with great pacience and quiet, and preserued their wealth in great prosperitie. This is the cause that they which gouerne common-wealthes ought to thinke, that the peoples good will is certainly to be esteemed: but withall, they must not too much trust therunto. This was the cause that *Axalla* marked that, saying that hee was troubled to devise how this great multitude might be contained in their fidelitie, if wee should receiue any disfauour, and commanded me to speake vnto the Prince, for to treat before his Armie

were any more decayed, and after that it was very necessary his wisdome should consider how to assiure this citie in his absence, the which was so peopled, and the people thereof being so light and inconstant. Now as I haue said, there was almost a yare spent since we began this enterprise, and our men were greatly diminished: the fall of the leafe also drawing neere, the which for the most part doth yeeld euill fruit vnto armes after their trauels, by the changing of humors, the which engender sicknesse. And this appeared alreadie within our armie, which caused the Prince to consider of many things; and not without cause, he doubted also some change within his owne countrie, the which long absences do often cause, the honour being no lesse in preseruing of that alreadie gotten, then in conquering of the same. Our Prince also did neuer refuse honourable conditions, the which he did more esteeme being obtained by peace then warre. He thought that his conquest consisting of almost halfe the kingdome, and in making the king tributarie for the rest, he should haue sufficient wherewith to bridle him, if at any time hee should deale badly, and would thereof be well aduised: and especially he hoped to assiure the same so well, as their lightnesse should be throughly punished, at what time soeuer they would vse it. He did thinke it conuenient if they came vnto profitable conditions for his aduantage, euen as the conquered doe yeeld vnto the conquerors, for to resolute himselfe to border his conquests on this side. Thus the Embassadours being arriued, who were of the kings chiefe vassals, *Tamerlan* receiued them with all humantie, causing his greatnesse to appeare vnto them, and therewithall the agilitie of his horsemen, to make the see with their eyes, that it would be

be the destruction of the *Chinois* name if he proceeded any further. So hauing saluted the Emperor with all reverence, they vttered their Embassage vnto him, which was that the kings brother had sent them vnto him to treat for two causes: the one, was for the liberty of their king, the other, for preseruation of their country; that he had vnderstood of his accustomed humanity; that themselues would make triall thereof, rather then to accuse the Gods of their ingratitude towards the *Chinois*, repenting themselues that they did not satisfie our iust demands at the first comming of our army; that they wold pay for it, the which was reasonable, and therfore, they came to receive the law of him, seeing he was the conquetour, and that nothing they shoulde opposse against him, could cut off his good happe, they must needs be one of his limits vnto posterity. The Prince hauing heard them, the same being declared vnto him by Interpreters, hee answered them, that they had reason to trustvnto his mildnesse, because that was alwaies more for the benefit of them that woulde trie it, then were his armes, and that the same was before any force offered vnto them, the vse of the one being more agreeable vnto him, then the other; but the endes of the warres, were for the most part enterprises for to come vnto peace, and to make those vnderstand reason, that refused the same: but seeing at this present, they desired it, he woulde yeeld thereunto. And this was the first word of curtesie he wold pronounce at their first comming: it belonged now vnto them to offer the conditiōs wherewith he woulde acquaint his counsell. Thereupon the Prince rose vp, & caused to be sayd vnto them, that they shold deliuer their offers in writing, & that present answer shoulde be made thereunto. Thus went they out

*An Embaſſage from the
king of China's
brother vnto
Tamerlan, to
treas for peace
& the kings
deliuerance.*

*The answer of
Tamerlan vnto
the Embaſſors.*

of the Princes presence with great ioy, and as it were as-
sured of peace, and to recover their former prosperities.
The cōditions which they offered were, to leaue *Paguinfou* & all the country beyond it, with all the fortresses of
the mōutains; that they wold pay al the charges of his ar-
my, since the day of answer made vnto his Embassadors;
that they wold giue two millions of gold, for their king.
This being presēted vnto the Lord, he made answer ther-
unto, which was, that he wold keep that which he had cō-
quered within the coūtry, the which was his owne iustly,
seeing his arms had giue it vnto him; that he wold haue
the riuier where he was now encamped to be his frontier,
stretched vnto *Hochioy*, *Tahaucezug*, *Cauchio*, *Lulun*, euen
vnto *Pochio* bordering vpon the sea; that the king of
China should pay vnto him yearly three hundred thou-
sand crowns, the which shold be deliuered at *Paguinfou*,
for acknowledgment of submision vnto the Eimpire, as
well for his successors as himselfe; that they should pay
fīe hundred thousand crownes in ready mony for the
charge of the army; that the king of *China* should be deliuered,
and all the *Chinois* prisoners shold pay ransome
vnto particular men that took them, except those which
caried the name of kings, who should pay one hundred
thousand crowns for peace with his armes; that no *Chi-
nois* should be kept as slauē, nor sold for such hereafter,
being vnder the Princes obedience, that trafique and
entercourse of Marchantes should be free betweene
both the nations; that the king of *China* should deliuer
his brother as prisoner, and two kings named, with
twelue principall men of the countrie for assurance,
who should come yearly with money for assurance of
the peace. Behold the Emperors answer & his resolutiō;
but alas the armes of the *Chinois*, and their forces, were

Conditions a-
greed vpon be-
tweene Tamer-
lan & the Chi-
nois.

so

so weakened, that they were yet glad to heare that they
should be suffered to inioy that which yet remained,
they accounted al things so certaine by lost, considering
the ill haps which on euery side did ouerwhelme them:
their best men were dead, and they which remained a-
stonished. The flower of their best mē of war, with their
king taken, two battels lost, and the two principall Ci-
tis of the kingdome taken, and the hardest passages
wonne: so as they did see nothing but a certaine destruc-
tion of the contry, if they came againe vnto the triall
of armes. The king whose captiuitiē did greatly con-
cerne them, could not be recovered but by peace, they
were also aduertised, that great store of new forces mar-
ched forward to refresh our army, so as they did ex-
spe& nothing but their certaine destruction. Therefore
they accepted of such conditiōs of peace as pleased the
conqueror, hoping that time would bring againe vnto
them their auncient liberty, and that for atime it be-
houed them to beare with patience the yoke of their
bondage. Now the Prince had sent two thousand horse,
to fetch the king of *China*, to the end that being at li-
berty, he might sweare to the peace solemnly, the which
hee hauing performed at *Quantoufou*, whither the
Prince caused him for to come, he brought with him
vnto *Paguin* all the pledges, and amongst the rest, the
kings eldest sonne, and his brother. The king being
departed for to performe his promise, according
to the treatie by him confirmed, hee was receiued,
and as it were worshipped within his countrie, with
all the ioy that might bee. In the meane time the
Emperour, after he had prouided for the assurance of
his newe conquest, hee left *Odmar* there to gouerne
them, and gaue vnto him an estate of thirtie thousand

horse and fifty thousand footemen, to furnish all the fortresses and strong places, the Prince hauing led with him, many of the new conquered people, desiring to haue them for to dwell within his country, and to send other Colonies in their places, to assure himselfe the better of the lightnesse of this people, hauing noted them to be inclined vnto nouelties. He gaue in charge vnto *Odmar* to make his principall abode at *Quantoufou*, and to fortifie well the passage: and also commanded a fortresse to be made at *Dermio*, the better to strengthen his borders: and after he had left him all things necessary, he recommended vnto him the seruices of that Lord, who had manifested vnto him his great affection. The Emperour hauing well tried his faithfulness in his affaires as they fell out, he caried with him a brother of his, vnto whom he gaue great gifts within *Sachetay*. Then we turned our faces straight vnto *Cambalu*, hauing aduertized the great *Cham* of the happie successe of our affaires, wherof many sayd, he had lost the oportunity of vtterly rooting out the *Chinois*: but they do nothing consider, the difficulties therein as yet remaining, and that we must sometimes content our selues with the meane, and know how to preserue them, without desiring at some time extreames, whereby doth often happen such accidents as bringeth the losse of all, and maketh that we retaine nothing of that which we accounted most assured, for that we sought more then we should haue desired. The Prince remained in deed king of *China*, holding in his possession, two of the fairest and greatest Cities of all the whole Countrie, hauing an hundred good leagues thereof vnto himselfe, and many lesser

*Odmar left
Gouerner of
China for Tamerlan.*

*A good adver-
tisement vnto
Conquerours.*

lesser Cities, hauing extended his borders vnto a riuier, by which he might go vnto the enemy, but they could not come vnto him without passing ouer the same: hauing good meanes to keep it and with aduantage. The king of *China* moreouer was his tributary offiue hundred thousand crownes yearly, and hauing the meanes at such time as he would not performe it, to be within the space offoure and twenty houres within his country, and he could not come into his: so as it was much more commendable to make this honourable treatie, then tyran-

nously to seeke for to subdue all, & to put vnto fire and sword a whole natiō, who willingly cast themselues into his armes as tributaries. Now the Prince desired aboue

*Tamerlan caus-
ed all the idole
within his con-
quest to be beat-
downe, establis-
hing the wor-
ship of one
God.*

all that the idols which were within his conquest, should be beaten downe, and commanded the worship of one God, establishing the same after the forme of his owne country, for he made account that in short time all wold be reduced vnto our customes. But the *Chinois* were not of that mind, & their patience was founded vpon hope of recovering by that meanes their former liberty: but they did not weigh, that the Princes foresight had bene such, that he had left there the most wise and sufficient Captaine that was in his kingdome, who wold not lose any occasion by his watchfulness to assure his affaires. When *Odmar* left the Prince, as the custome is, he humbled himselfe too much. The Prince in lifting of him vp, sayd vnto him; I see well now that thou art a *Chinois*, seeing thou wilt worship me euen as they do their king: the worship I require of thee, is the remembrance thou shalt continually haue to do my commaundements, desiring thee to establish in my newe conquest, the honour of God, and after that, my authoritie through your faithfulness: you knowe this estate

better then I, call to thy remembrance that the sword hath conquered them, and not loue or goodwill: therefore hope not to haue them assured, whom feare retaineth, and not any loue, I recommend my seruice vnto thee. I did neuer see the Prince in greater griefe then now at his departure: but he was driuen of necessity to employ the faithfulnessse and wisedome of *Odmar*. So our army wherein was much sicknesse, began to march, and on the third daie hauing newes of forces which came towards vs, the Prince sent them a commandement not to come any further forward, and that they should march straight vnto *Cambala*, where the Prince did suppose to find the Emperor his vnkle, who had set forward towards that place to haue the good hap for to see him, being determined to receive him at *Cambala* with magnificence & triumphs, as he wel deserued. Now I wil declare by the way, how *Odmar* being seuered from vs, all

Tamerlan turned his fauour vnto Axalla

the Princes fauour was turned vnto *Axalla*, vnto whom he committed the whole charge of his army, in so much as *Axalla* although he was alwaies in great reputation, notwithstanding the same was much increased by the Prince at *Quantoufou*, where the Prince did trust him with the army, in so waightie an enterprise as that was, and the which he so gloriously atchieued: likewise the maner of entring into the kingdome of *China*, the intelligences he had: so as the report of his valour did flye throughout all the Empire. *Calibes* led the vanguard, and *Axalla* was in the battell neare vnto the Emperour, who gaue him the chiefeſt place, bestowing vpon him two hundred thousand crownes yearly, for to maintaine his ordinarie expēces. Now he for his part had no desire to leaue his maister at quiet, being desirous to draw him backe againe into his countrie, to the ende

Two hundred thousand crownes of yearly rent gaue vnto Axalla by Tamerlan.

he

he might afterwards moue him to enterprise ſome great matter, the which might redound as well vnto the glorie of his maister, as the quiet of the Christians, of whom hee was verie carefull, whatſoever was the cauſe thereof. Thus after certaine dayes journey, we receiued newes, of the Emperours arriall at *Cambala*, the Prince hauing left his army in a faire countrie for to winter, where he diſmissing many of our ſouldiers, we arriued within four leagues of *Cambala*, whither all the Princes of the Emperours Court, came for to receiue him, together with al the principal inhabitants, for to gratifie our Prince for his happie voyage. The Prince hauing receiued euery one, according to his wōted curteſie, retaining notwithstanding conuenient Maieſty, he was beheld to the great contentment of all his ſubiects. He had with him the Emprefſe his wife, who had not leſt him in his voyage. The next day the Emperour did him ſo much honour, as to come and meeet him, with all the magnificence that might be. He gaue a preſent vnto the Emperour his vnkle, of all the riſhest chariots and faireſt horſes he had wonne. And I can affiue you, that at ſuch time as the Prince ſet foote on ground, for to do reuerence vnto his vnkle, the Emperour wept for ioy, and this old Prince being on horſebacke, would haue deſcended; but our Prince beſeeched him not to do him that wrong, and with all the humilitie which he did owe vnto his Prince and Lord, he hindred him from alighting. The Emperour was verie desirous to ſee his daughter: he cauſed her chariot to be vncouered, and cauſed her to enter into his: but the Prince remained on horſebacke, whom the eyes of all the people could not be ſatiſfied with admiring. The Prince preſented *Calibes* vnto the Emperour, and

*The meeting
betweene the
great Cam &
Tamerlan at
the City of
Cambala in
Cataio.*

making a recitall of his faithfulness, and the endeuer of euery one, he caused the Emperour to giue vnto him an hundred thousand crownes of increase vnto his pension. *Axalla* was also presented vnto the Emperour, who being informed of his valor, he was received withall the best fouours that might be, and he gaue vnto him, of the reuenues belonging vnto the Empire, an hundred thousand *Tartarins* of gold in a Principality, that he might the better declare vnto him how much he esteemed of his fedelity. This ioy and pleasure continued with vs all the winter, where the Prince having receiued aduertisement how *Baiazet* Emperour of the Turkes, had enterprised to ioyne the Empire of Greece vnto his owne, & fully determined to besiege *Constantinople*: the which he vnderstanding & succour being required of him by the Greeke Emperour, he dispatched one towards *Baiazet*, for to declare vnto him his pleasure herein, and warned him on his behalfe, not to trouble the Emperour *Paleologue* who was his confederate. Now this motion came from Prince *Axalla*, who had wrought this league, being of kinne vnto *Paleologue*, and also thrust forward with desire to maintaine his religion in Greece, where hee was borne of the *Genewois* race. VWhereunto being answered verie proudly, by *Baiazet* vnto our Emperour, asking what he had to do therewith, and that he should content himselfe with enioyning lawes vnto his subiects, and not vnto others, seeing he was not borne his subiect. This answere being made, *Axalla* procured to be verie ill accepted of the Emperour, and in such sort, that he determined to hinder this enterprise of the *Ottomans*, not being conuenient for the greatnessse of the Tartarian Empire, to suffer such a

*Axalla's re-
warded by the
great Cam for
his good service
and faithfulness.*

*A message sent
by Tamerlan
vnto Baiazet.*

*The prouide-
sives of Bai-
zet.*

neigh-

neighbour, who would eu'en trouble his allies: so as the Ambassador returned from thence assured of the Princes succour against *Baiazet*: who in the meane time was not idle, but continued dayly his enterprise, seeking all meanes to accomplish the same: thinking that what messages soever were sent vnto him, were no other then threatnings. But on the other side also, the Prince vnto whom rest and ease was already become tedious, egged forward also by *Axalla*, with the increase of his glorie & name, being desirous of this enterprise, did not cease vntill the Prince did send him vnto *Sachetay*, for to giue beginning vnto the assembling of forces frō all parts, to the end that about the spring time he might march forward. The Emperour also had receiued newes of the battell lost by the Greeks, and that their affaires were like to go ill, if they were not succoured: the which made the Prince more forward, also to hinder these *Ottoman* dogges (for so he called them) mad for troubling the world. *Axalla* sent word also vnto the Prince how all things proceeded, and earnestly moued him to depart. Now the Prince had obtained of the Emperour his vngle an hundred thousand footmen and fourescore thousand horse, hoping to haue as many from *Sachetay*, besides the Lords who would accompany him for to win glory, frō whō he made accōut also of 50000. mē more that they would bring vnto him, besides the other forces. He supposed that he had abilitie to deliuer the Empire of Greece from the bōdage of the *Ottomans*. Thus the Prince departed, leauing the Empresse with the Emperour her father, for to serue him as a comfort of his age: it was not without a hard farewell of the Emperours part towardes his nephew; but more grieuous on the Princes part towardes his wife, who had neuer left

*Hearie for-
ting.*

him since the time they were maried: but nothing withheld our Prince, where there was either glory, or meanes to increase his reputation, & profite the cōmon wealth: saying often, that he was borne to this end, and that he must take in these exercises his principall delights: for euery other thing wherein he did exercise himself was but borrowed, being appointed and called of God to punish the pride of tyrants. Neither will I here omit a dreame, which our Prince had the night before he departed from *Cambalu*, which was, that he did see as he thought, a great multitude of reuerent men, who put forth their hands vnto him, requiring his succour against the violence of certaine tyrants, who did afflict them with sundry kindes of tormentes: he sayd, that he did neuer see more reuerent countenances, and that some of them were apparelled in white, and others in cloth of gold, some hauing as it were crownes of gold vpon their heads, and it seemed vnto the Prince, that he gaue the his hand, & lift them very high. This dreame he recited vnto vs the next morning, but no body was able to give him the interpretation thereof, and him selfe thought no more of the same. Now to returne agayne, we departed from *Cambalu* accompanied with all the Citie, with all the loue and grieve of a good people towards their Prince. In like maner, the Prince during the time he abode there, vsed all kindes of liberalities and magnificences that might be, after he had received all maner of presents that can be named of euery one, as a witnessse of their affection. The Prince was accompanied also with *Calibes*, and he cōmaunded the Prince of *Tanais* to take vpō him the state of Colonell of the footmen, the which *Axalla* had left: vnto whom he gaue the charge of Lieutenant generall within his armie, with com-

A notable saying of Tamerlan.

Tamerlan his dreams.

Tamerlan his journey againts the Turke.

commaundement to leade his auantguard, and *Calibes* the ariere-ward, being accompanied with farre greater forces then euer he had in any of his armies: for they came vnto him from all parts. The *Chinois* Lord was licenced by *Odmar* to go with 20000. men of the subiects newly conquered, being desirous to shew him self vnto the Emperour, as also for to learne our maners & fashions. The absence & separation of our maister was grieuous vnto none but *Odmar*, not for the feare of the *Chinois* his neighbours, but verily for the chāge of fortune. The Prince hauing sent him word of his purpose, he cōfirmed the same, & amongst other things, he sent word vnto the Emperour, that he should hope for all good successe therin, seeing he was created by God for to cast down the proude & raise vp the humble: the Prince also did mislike of nothing more then the cruelty. I remēber wel, that whē we were at *China*, whē he perceiued this fierce nation, he sayd, I am sent to pull downe the glory of this proud man, I hope to haue a good end thereof. So we arriued leauing our forces, the which came straight vnto *Ocera*, where they had appointed the generall meeeting of all the army, and the Prince tooke his voyage directly vnto *Samarcand* the place of his birth, three years being past since he had bin there. *Zamay* came to meeete him, and I verily beleue a million of men, blessing and praysing him in all manner of songs. All the Princes of the countrey also ran to visite him, he abode there a moneth. *Axalla* in this meane time was already at the meeting place at *Ocera*, who prepared all things, looking for the Princes commaundement for to go vnto him, aduertising him often of the doings of *Baiazet*. I haue forgotten also to declare, how the Prince sent vnto the *Moscouite* to be fauoured by him in this enterprise,

Tamerlan re-
turneth from
the conquest of
China vnto
Samarcand.

A sound deli-
beration.

Axalla gover-
ned all the e-
state, his com-
mendation.

who presently sent Ambassadours with offers of what soever should please him. The Prince made demand of fifteene thousand horse, and the payment of certaine money the which he owed, the which was graunted vnto him, and also passage through all his dominions, being very glad that he did set vpon others then on himselfe, and that so great a preparation should fall vpon them, whose greatnesse was as prejudiciale and fearefull vnto him, as it was vnto our Prince, the *Ottomans* at that time bringing not onely suspition vnto their neighbours, but which was much more, all the earth was astonished at their sudden greatnesse, and of the happy successe they had in all their enterprises, being of so small a beginning attained vnto so large an Empire. Now this was the verie reason that moued the Emperour to oppose himselfe against the same, thinking it much better to go and set vpon them within their new conquestes, then for to stay vntill they were come nearer vnto him, and should come to debate their quarrell within his Empire vnto his damage: a sound deliberation; for the same tendeth vnto two effects, the one is that it destroyeth the enemies countrey, and the other, that any disfavour comming vnto him, his countrey receiueth not thereby any astonishment, so as this enterprise was greatly for his aduantage. Now our Prince did all this through the couisell of Prince *Axalla*, by whom at that time all the estate was gouerned, & the great authority which this man had, was not without the enuy of diverse Courtiers: notwithstanding the readye fashion of *Axalla* to content euery one, accompanied with his singular vertues, together with so many seruices that hee had done, did vphold him agaist the enuious; as also for that he was no lesse acceptable

The commenda-
tion of Prince
Axalla.

table vnto the old Emperour then vnto his maister, who did often remeber the daungers & the braue enterprises he had executed in the affaires his maister had, as well against the *Moscouites*, as at the rebellion of *Cambalu* & *Catayo*, & in the last conquest of the kingdome of *China*: so as his authoritie was great, with this, that he was courteous and humaine, and friendly towards euery one, and who spake dayly vnto his maister of great matters, and alwayes propounded vnto him honorable enterprises, whereunto he would be the first to set his hands, without sparing the hazard of his life at all. And although our Emperour was accompanied with great renowned Princes, yet were they no bodie in comparision of the vertues and the greatnesse the which *Axalla* had gotten with his maister, whether it were in pompe, in liberallitie, and in furniture of slaues and horses: for hauing a great mind & sharpe wit, he made vse thereof politike-ly to maintaine him self. Moreouer he neuer gaue counsell the which he did not offer to execute, and he was happy for that they had successe according to his desire, which procured him great authority; but he had a grace beyond all this: for he was humble vnto euery body, the which made him well beloued, in humbling him selfe (in such greatnesse) even vnto the sinallest. I was one day in a place when the Prince did reprehend him for this so great mildenesse. He answered him, that it belonged vnto his maister to be stately, but for me it is my trade to play the slau and seruaunt, and as greatnesse doth well befeeme you, so doth humilitie me, for I am not about you but for to honour you: for if you be honored I shalbe also. Also how humbly soever I carrie my selfe, what neede you to care so as I serue you well? if I should be stately, I should be odious vnto the great

men of your Court, and I should sever them from you. I will haue them honor me, for seruing well of you, & not for my countenāce. This answere did greatly please the Emperour, & it was a cunning to cause him to be beloued, the which fel out happily for him: for they honored him more then he would. Now for to come againe vnto the Princes purpose, we will for this time leaue *Axalla*, whose nature I was willing to expresse vnto you, the which shall serue to giue you vnderstanding of manie things, that shalbe declared of him within this historie. So the Emperour sent vnto *Axalla* to come vnto him at *Samarcand*, for to receiue directions from him for the setting forward of his armie. Now hauing left by the Emperors commaundement the Prince of *Thana* to commaund, he came vnto him, & cōsulted with him of the order for his army: and hauing resolued that it was best to passe by the borders of the *Mosconite*, to go directly vnto *Constantinople* the seate of the Greeke Emperours, whither they sayd the armie of *Baizet* Emperour of the Turkes did march, being alreadie come downe into *Asia Minor*, there was a kinsman of *Axalla* dispatched, for to assure the Emperour of Greece of our armies comming forward, and that great prouision of victuals was made from all parts for maintenance of the same. We departed from *Samarcand*, for to go vnto *Ozara*, where was the meeting place for all the Princes troupes: and hauing in that place taken aduise for his iourney, that is to say, for to know whether shold be more expedient and fauorable, either to go by the coastes of *Mosconie* directly vnto *Capha*, or rather on the other side of the sea *Bachu* to passe by the skirtes of *Perſia*. It was resolued in the ende, after sundry opinions, although the way were the longer, to passe

Consultation
about the way
the armie
should take to
the Turkes
Empire.

passe vnto *Capha* for to come vnto *Trebisonda* and to the *Georgians*, and from thence to enter into the limits of the *Ottomans*. Then our armie after the accustomed ceremonies and prayers made vnto God, wherein our Emperour hoped to finde his principall succours, we drew straight vnto *Maranis* where the armie abode three dayes, looking for the forces which *Odmar* did send, whereof they received newes. There did the Emperour cause all his armie to be payed, and a generall muster was made. He had newes also there of the forces that the *Mosconite* did send vnto him: he likewise caused an infinite quantitie of victuals and the most part of his furniture to be conueyed by the sea of *Bachu*, there being some twentie leagues where was *Bachu*. want of water and victuals, through the which our armie must needs passe, causing all things necessarie to be caried by water, the which was a great commoditie vnto vs: and there was a commaundement giuen at all the shoares of the sea, that they should bring all the vessels for to carrie the munition of the armie: so as this foresight did greatly ease our army. The Prince wēt cōtinually coasting the sea shoare, passing away his time in hūting, & his armie came not neare vnto him by 10. leagues, except such as came to seeke necessaries for the army, the which did extēd it selfe some 20. leagues, it was so great. The Prince abode at *Sarafich* during the time his army passed the riuier of *Edel* at *Mechet*, and at two or three other bridges, the which they had caused to be made; there had he certain newes how *Baizet* marched vnto the siege of *Constantinople*, hauing reduced vnto his obediēce all *Bithinia*, & *Bursia* a very noble city, the which he caused to be fortified, & diuers other Cities, vſing all the cruelties that might be, in so much as all the adioy-

Tamerlan his
diſſeſt truſt.

Tamerlan hū-
ted by the way
towards the
Turke.

Baizet mar-
ched vnto the
siege of Con-
stantinople.

ning prouinces yelded theselues his tributaries: amōgst the rest the noble Citie of *Capha*, wherewith the Emperor was greatly moued, because it had first put it self vnder his protectiō before the *Turke*; & this had bin compassed by the meanes of *Axalla*, where he was borne, who was also the more offended because it was his country, so farre forth as he sent to summō them to come & yeeld a reason vnto the Emperor of their fidelitie: wherupon the Citie receiued a great astonishment, and the principall men of the same Citie came vnto the Prince, who sent to be informed of all; and being ready to receiue the punishment for their infidelitie, after diuerse presents by them made of very excellent *Martens* & other furres, pardon was graunted vnto them, & the citie was by the Prince giue vnto *Axalla* for to dispose of the same: the which he did, going thither to see his kinsfolk, and to take such order there, as he thought was for the preseruatiō of the Citie, as one not vngratefull vnto his countrey: and it was not without seasing vpon *Tane*, the which was belonging vnto the Seigniorie of *Genua*, of *Acha* and *Lopeso*, who submitted them selues vnto the Prince, and commaundement was giuen vnto *Axalla* to take order therein. This Lord which had refused the commaundement of the kingdome of *China* and of so many good Cities, did plainly shew, that there is nothing more deare, nor that a man doth more esteeme, then his countrey, whereof after a sort he now received possession. Behold *Axalla*, who in the end made there the choice of his resting place, notwithstanding the greatnessse he might promise vnto him selfe, being the second person in the Court of the greatest Monarke of the world: making no reckening thereof, he rather placed his hope in this litle shoare of *Mar Maiore*, then in

*Axalla a prin-
cipall worker
against the
Turke for the
relicuing of the
Grecian Em-
pire, and a-
gainst Capha
the place of his
natuitie.*

*The govern-
ment Axalla
did chuse.*

in the limits of *Scithia* and *China*, and for to succeed after his master vnto all his great conquests, for that hee had all the souldiers at his commaundement, and great credite amongst all the people ouer whom his Prince commaunded. Now the army had spent some time in refreshing it selfe, to the end it might be gathered together, when any neede should require; the Prince determining from hence forward to march within his armie, the which he had not done vntill this present, hauing spent his time in pleasures, leauing the burthen of conducting his whole armie vpon *Axalla*. Now as soone as we came neare vnto the holy mountaines, the *Circassians* and *Georgians* sent vnto the Emperour for to offer vnto him all the helpe and assistance they could for his iourney. Nowe they be Christians and a very great Nation, who haue beeene always tributaries vnto the Grecian Emperour, acknowledging this Empire euer since they were conquerd by *Pompey*. For these Nations, being part of those overwhom the great *Mithridates* raigned, at such time as *Pompey* subdued them, they were very desirous of the coming of this great power, the which seemed to be sent from heaven to deliver the Grecian Empire from the cruell bondage of the *Ottomanes*. *Axalla* drew many of this people vnto the Princes seruice, who are greatly esteemed for their bracie courage and strength, being all of them tall men, verie beautifull, wearing long haire: they are verie expert in warres, and haue often resisted the power of the *Ottomanes*, by reason of the aduantage they haue within their countrey, the which is hard to come vnto, they (for the most part) vpon the first rumor of warre, burning all their houses, and making verie great waistes to hinder the enemies, and by

*Tamerlan
marched with-
in his armie,*

*description
of the Georgi-
ans in their
country.*

these meanes they are able to resist any power whatsoeuer that shall come to assalt them. The Prince tooke great pleasure to beholde these faire people, and was very glad to heare of their valour, and carefull to provide that they should not be iniured in anie thing; at this present time they were vnder the Empire of *Trebisonda*, the which the Grecian Emperours possessed. The Prince was every where received verie friendly, and they brought vnto vs all the helpe of victuals that might be, to supply the want of our armie. Here had he certaine newes of the siege that was before Constantinople, where the Emperour was shut vp, and all his estate brought vnto great necessarie, *Baizet* haing a very great and mightie armie, who neither beleueed, nor once thought that we would come vpon him, so exceeding barbarous was hee, that he would not endure anie man so much as to speake onely vnto him of our armie, as despising it, he was so proud: and there he caused all the bordering people publickly to bee forbidden, to make any vowes and prayers for our prosperitie. For I will declare a truth, that wee marched with such order, and the souldiers haing such commaundement, that none of the people where wee passed, were iniured in the passage of our armie, iustice raigned so amongst vs. Insomuch as if a souldier had taken but an apple, he was put to death, and this was seuerely obserued ouer all, a thing vsuall and especially in this iourney, the which was the onely cause of ouerthrowing the tyrannie of the *Ottomans*, and of this proud *Baizet*. So we arriued at *Bachichiche*, where the armie refresched it selfe for the space of eight dayes. Vnto this place came the Embassadors of *Guines*, vnto the Emperour,

*Notable ini-
stice amongst
the Tartarians*

perour, whom the Prince did greatly reuerence for his holinesse. The saide Embassadors offered on the behalfe of their maister, all assistance and ayde vnto this enterprise, and brought faire horses vnto the Emperour the which their maister had sent vnto him, with assurance of good successe in his enterprise: for this foresaid *Guines* did prophesie, and was a great Astrologian. The Emperour seemed greatly to honour this Embassage, and sent vnto the saide *Guines* great store of rich furres, and vessell of gold, & whilst we soioured in that place, the armie made a generall muster, and were payed, as well the horsemen as the footmen, the Prince haing made an oration vnto them (as his custome was, at such time as his souldiers made their generall muster) and informed them the manner he would haue obserued in the fight, to the end they might obserue the military discipline, whereof he was verie curious with his Captaines. And also vpon this same day it was permitted vnto euerie souldier for to behold him with more boldnesse then on other dayes, for as much as he doth for that time lay aside his Imperiall Maestie, to humble himselfe, and become familiar, so farre foorth as to exhort his souldiers vnto vertue. So the Emperour after he had caused generall prayers to be published, wee departed from *Bachichiche*, and they reckened that there was in our army three hundred thousand horsemen, & fve hundred thousand footme, of all kinds of Nations. The Emperor was aduertised that the *Ottomans* were become masters of all *Greece*, in so much as the Emperour was of opinion, that *Baizet* would passe ouer into *Europe*, whē he shold perceiue that he approched: at the leaft wile the reason of war made him iudge that he wold do so: but it fel out

*Guines a great
Astrologian.*

*The custome of
the Tartari-
ans towards
their Emperor.*

farre otherwise: for as soone as we had gone beyond the *Georgians*, and were come vnto *Buisabuiche*, *Axalla* whom the Prince had not seene in eight dayes, becaisfe he ledde the head of the armie, came vnto the Emperour, knowing verie well, that he could not bring vnto him more acceptable newes then hee did bring, the which was that *Baizet* had raised his siege for to come and defend his new conquest, and that it was a most certaine thing, that he was resolued to come vnto a day of battell: that he had caused all his forces to come out of *Greece*, as many of them as he could drawe from all partes, trusting not vpon the multitude, but rather in the boldnesse and experience of his souldiers, who were well trayned vp in the warres. This did greatlie reioyce the Emperour, but yet it was not with insolencie of vaunting, but rather with the countenance of a personage, who iudged the euentes of battells to be ordinarily doubtfull. And hee sayd, that a small number well conducted, is oftentimes victorious. We soiourned three dayes at this *Buisabuiche*, and we caused our souldiers continually to aduance forward, and to passe ouer *Euphrates*, for to find better meanes to maintaine our armie vpon the spoyle of the enemie in attending their comming, rather then vpon our owne selues, or on our Allies. From that place the Emperour did dispatch vnto the Emperour his vnkle one of the greatest fauourites he had about him, for to certifie vnto him of the deliuerie of this noble Citie of *Constantinsple*, and how the *Ottomans* came fully resolued to giue battell; and for to prevent dangers, he gaue comandement that they shoulde keepe the borders strong, & all his forces on horseback vpon the enemis side: for often times as in prosperitie

all

*Tamerlan in his
saying of bat-
tels.*

all your neighbours do simile vpon you, and encline to-wards you: so whensoeuer an ouerthrow happeneth, euery one setteth vpon you, & do help to spoile you. For this cause shold wise Princes assure well that which they do alreadie possesse, least the victorious enemie pur-
*A good adver-
tisement for
Princes.*
suing his good fortune, take from you the meanes to raise your selfe vp againe. Our Emperour had alwayes this wisedome, when such blowes happened, for to aduertise his countries to stand vpon their guard, rather then to publish vnto them his victorie. So wee departed from thence after the Prince had assembled all the principall men of his armie, to impart vnto them his purpose, and for to receiue counsell of them, the which his courtesie did vse of custome, that made him to be beloued. For the farther you were from him then did hee most honour you: there were so manie severall Nations within our armie, so many Captaines sent vnto him for his succour, and then was the time when he principally was humble, and layd aside his grauitie, feasting them for the aide and succour they gaue vnto our armie. Amongest the straungers this Chinois Lord did ordinarily receiue great honour of the Prince, who was always wont to say, that the vertue of *Axalla*, and the loue of this Lord towards him, had made him Lord of the fairest kingdome of *Asia*. The Emperour was verie desirous to acquaint and instruct this Lord with the manners and fashions of those people by whom we passed, for he was always neere vnto the Emperours person; and all the forces he had cōducted vnto our armie, wherin the Prince made shew to put great confidence; they had marched with vs these two monethes, and carried themselues very well, as all our other forces did, viueuals being there in

H 3

The causes of
Tamerlan's
warre against
the Turkes.

great plentie, that which gaue vs so much thereof, was the great iustice therein obserued. So our armie came vnto *Garga*, where it passed the riuier *Euphrates*, the auantgard at *Chinserig*; and the generall meeting of the armie was appointed to be at *Gianich*, the which did yeeld it selfe: and there had wee newes that *Baizet* his armie was neare vnto vs, within some thirty leagues, which caused vs to march more close. All the cities yeelded, the Emperor receiuing them graciously, and those which refused obedience, were cruelly puniſhed, especially ſuch inhabitants as were Turkes, but the Christians ſet in full libertie, vnder the name of the Greeke Emperor *Emanuell*, whom the Emperor would wholly gratifie, *Axalla* hauing received this commaundement from the Prince: ſo he cauſed them to ſweare fidelitie vnto *Emanuell*, his purpose beeing to ſet him againe into his Empire, and to puniſh this *Baizet* for being ſo rafh, as to enterprife to deſtroy ſo flouriſhing an Empire, as that of the Greekes his Allies. Now the Emperours quarrell was iuft againſt this proud lightning from heauen, especially in reſpect of his execrable cruelties hee uſed againſt all ſexes and ages, uſurping an Empire the which had ſought all poſſible meaneſ to make peace with his Arines: but he ſoone broke it, and falſified his faith vnto this poore Emperor, according as he found the meaneſ by little and little, to uſurpe almoſt all from him, there remaining no more vnto him, but ſome ſmall towneſ belonging vnto his Metropolitan Citie, the which he had alſo beſieged. It was then an honourable thing, for the Emperor to deliuere this noble Empire from ſuch great tyrannie, an Empire ſo famous in the world, and a citie ſo auncient, out of the hands

of

of ſo wicked and accuſed an offſpring. This was the cauſe that made the Emperor to hope for to haue God, his great God for an helper in this enterprife. But beſore I beginne, I am deſirous to ſpeake a word of the vprightneſſe of the Princes cauſe, and alſo for to note the worthineſſe of his courage, in giuing helpe vnto the weake, and puniſhing of the proud, repreſenting by ſuch deedeſ, the image of the diuinitie, the which ſhould be marked in Princes, in vpholding the weake ones, and those that require ſuccour againſt ſuch oppreſſions. So God being with vs, the armie fully replenished with ioy and hope, we departed from *Gianich*. *Axalla* who was in the auantgard, hauing comauanded foure thouſand Parthian horſe for to get knowledge of the armie, vnder the charge of *Chianſon* Prince of *Ciarcian*, comauanding him to put all vnto fire and ſword, and alſo to bring word vnto him of the place where *Baizet* was, and what countrie that was beyonde *Sennas*; and if hee could leaue anie thing thereoſ, he ſhould make relation thereoſ vnto him. This Captaine was of great reputation, and next vnto *Axalla*, he had the commanding of the auantgard in his abſence: this man ſent before him a Parthian light-horſeman with fiue hundred horſe. So hee had not riſen tenne leagues, but they heard neweſ of the armie, and hauing ſurprized *Sennas*, they underſtood there the eſtate of the Turkes armie, the which was at *Tataya*, and marched forward. The which being certified vnto the Emperor, commandement was giuen vnto them, not to retire from that place, vntill they did ſee the arriuall of the enemie, and thereoſ to giue aduertiſement euerie houre: the Prince determining to paſſe on no further, hauing ſene a faire

fourthouſand
Parthian horſe
ſent to deſcie.

plaine, and a countrie of aduantage for the order of his battell: for he knew that he had to deale with people expert in warres, and which were accustomed to fight against the Christians, who are verie actiue and war-like people, who wanted not the knowledge of war-like stratagemes. They knewe also, that his armie was greater then *Baiazets*: but it was yet of diuerse parts, so as it behoued to be well aduised, for it was not against the Chinois soft and effeminate people, but against souldiers, well acquainted with all manner of fights that are to be fought. Then the Emperour did not omit any vigilancie for to keepe his aduantage, *Axalla* was sent for by the Emperour to come and accompanie him for to view the said place, and to consider whether it would be for his aduantage, and to haue his aduise. This place is between the sea & *Gianche* on the side of *Sennas* boūded of one side with a litle riuier which runneth into *Euphrates*. And he was aduised to keepe *Sennas* as long as he could possibly, and sent word vnto those which were within the same, to set it on fire when as they shold withdraw themselues from thence, to the end that the enemie shold not haue a desire to encamp therein: but shold come forward nearer vnto our armie into these plaines, the place which we desired to fight in, because wee were stronger in horsemen then the *Ottomans*. Thus behold this great armie of *Baiazet* encouraged vnto the battell, who thought to haue surprised our men within *Sennas*, but as soone as they drewe neare, our men set it on fire, and the greatest part retiring, there remained some hundred horse to performe the same, who retyred themselues in verie great disorder. Now the Prince of *Ciarcan* had deuided his men into two troupes, & giuen cōmandement vnto the

the first troupe, that as soone as they perceiued the enemies to pursue the hundred horse, they shold receiue them, and retire iointly together. Now hee had the rest of his power in a valley neere vnto a wood, and hauing suffered some two thousand of the enemies horse, Turks auant-currers to passe by him, he charged them behind, and fought with them, they not fighting but flying as soone as they did see themselues pres-
 sed: many were slaine, and manie were taken prisoners. This was the first time we fought, and carried away the victorie: all the prisoners were sent vnto the Prince, amongst the rest the Bassa of Natolia, who led this troupe, of whom the Emperour earnestlie demanded, what caused *Baiazet* so litle to esteeme him, as to shew so great contempt of his Armie, and that hee should find that he was well able to punish his pride. The other answered, that his Lord was the Son of the earth, that he could not indure a companion, that hee surely was astonished, how he from so far had enterprised so dangerous a iourney, to hinder the fortune of his Lord, in whose fauour the heauens did bend theselues, because they were not able to withstand him, that all the rouud world did subiect themselues vnto him, and that hee cōmitted great folly in going about to resist the same. The Emperour answered, I am sent from heauen for to *Tamerlan's* reply vnto the Bassa.

A proud answer of a Bassa made vnto Tamerlan.

ster doth come to bid me battaile? The Bassa answered, yea, assuring you that there is nothing hee more defirereth: and I beseech you that I may acknowledge your greatnessse in giuing me leaue to assist my Lord at this Battaille. The Emperor said vnto him; I giue thee leaue, go and tell thy Lord that thou hast seene me, and that I will fight on horseback in the place where he shal see a greene ensigne. The Bassa did sweare, that next vnto his Lord he vowed his seruice vnto him. Then hee returned, and declared vnto *Baiazer* how hee had seene *Tamerlan*, reciting vnto him all that he was willed to declare. Of this (said hee) I will make triall, and I belleeue he will acknowledge his follie before the match be ended. The Bassa did not forget to publish ouer all, the mildnesse of *Tamerlan*, his greatnessse, and curtesie, declaring that he did so farre extend his curtesie, as to giue vnto him a verie faire horse, although he might well thinke that it was to fight against himselfe. So the next day *Baiazer* his Armie drew neare vnto the sight of ours, the which marched two leagues: and wee encamped within a league the one of the other. All the night long you might haue heard such noise of horses, as it seemed the heauens were ful of voices, the aire did so resound, and euery one was desirous to haue the night passed, for to come each one vnto the triall of his valor. Vnto the Scithian nation, the which is desirous of goods, they propounded the great riches they should get by the victory ouer the *Ottomans*. Vnto the Parthian nation ambitious of rule, the honor and glory of their nation, being conquerers of them, who only were able to take from them the Empire of Asia. The Christians who made the fourth part thereof, assured theselues to conquer their greatest enemy. Behold how euery one

spake

How *Tamerlan*'s army passed the night before the battaille fought against the *Turke*.

spake during the night time, according to his humours. The Prince this night went through his Camp bearing all this, & was very glad to see the hope that euery one of his soldiers did conceiue already of the victorie; & I being neere him, and he did me the honor to tell mee, that at the time he fought the battaille against the *Moscouit*, he did heare all the night long all kinds of songs, the which resounded in his Campe, seeing in a maner no bodie sleepe: I hoped then (said he) to haue some good hap, and I trust to receiue the like nowe. Now after the second watch the Prince returned vnto his lodging, and casting himselfe vpon a carpet, he meant to sleepe: but the desire of day would not suffer him for to sleepe; hee then commaunded me to giue him a booke, wherin he did reade: therin was contained the liues of his fathers and grandfathers, and of other valiant knights, the which he did ordinarilie reade: he called me, hauing light vpon (in reading) the discourse of a battaille that his grandfather had lost against the *Persians*, the which he had thought to haue gottē (very vndiscreetly) hauing assaulted his enemie, many aduantages being propounded vnto him, whereof he might haue made good vse, all which he neglected, trusting vnto his owne valor and that of his fouldiers. And hauing ended his speech, he commanded me to reade the same before him, and said vnto me, I alwaies reade this before I begin a battaille, to the end I shold not so much trust vnto the Lyons skin, wherin I wrap my arme, that I shold not serue my self with the Foxes, to wrap therewith my head: for thus (said he) my grandfather was in a place of aduantage, & he wēt out of it to seek his enemy, who was lodged strōgly, & whatsoeuer his men said to him, he went on headlong, shutting his eare against

Tamerlan's
custom before
a battaille.

all the counsell and aduise of his seruants, and demanding of me whether it were day, hee caused the great Chamberlaine to be called, and commanded him to to cause his trumpet to be sounded, and that his horse should be ready: and hauing a little slumbred, he gaue commandement that *Axalla* should be sent for, who came vnto him with other Lords and Captaines, the chiefest of the Armie, with whom after he had consulted of the order of his battaile. Hee mounted on horsebacke, and sent euerie one for to make themselues ready to do the like: at the same instant he receiued newes that the enemies Armie marched forward, and came to take his ground for the battaile. The Emperour desired to see him march, that according to his order hee might marshall his owne: and hauing caused three thousand horse to aduance forward, vnto whom he had giuen in charge to beginne the skirmish, himselfe aduanced forward to lodge euerie man in such places as he had foreseen to be most for his aduantage. Now he seeing the Turkish footmen march, whom they do call Ianizaries, the which were placed in the middest, and vpon the two fronts, two great squadrons of horsmen, the which seemed to be thirtie thousand horse, & another which aduanced and couered the batallion of the the Ianizaries. He thought this order to be verie good, and hard to breake, and turning himselfe vnto *Axalla*, who was neare vnto him, hee said, I had thought to haue fought on foote, but it behoueth me this day to fight on horsebacke, for to giue courage vnto my soldiers to open the great Batallion: and my will is, that they come forward vnto me as soone as they may: for I will aduance forward an hundred thousand footmen, fifty thousand vpon each of my two wings, and in the mid-

The maner of
the march of
the Turkish
footmen.

The order of
Tamerlan his
battaile.

dest of them forty thousand of my best horse. My pleasure is, that after they haue tried the force of those me, that they come vnto my auantguard, of whom I will dispose (& fiftie thousand horse more) in three bodies, whom thou shalt command, the which I will assist with foure-score thousand horse, wherein shal be mine own person, hauing an hundred thousand footmen behind me, who shall march in two troupes; and for my Arierward fortie thousand horse, and fiftie thousand footmen, who shall not march but vnto my aide: I will make chiose of ten thousand of the best horse, whom I will send into euerie part where I shall thinke needfull within my Armie, for to impart my commandements. Ouer the first fortie thousand the Prince *Caucian* commanded: ouer the formost footmen was the Lord *Synopes*, a Geneuois, kinsman vnto *Axalla*, and he which was his Lieutenant ouer the footmen, a Captaine of great estimation. That ouer which the Prince *Axalla* commanded, consisted of fife squadrons of horsmen. *Baiazer* his Armie seemed faire and great, which was aduanced continuallie forward towards vs, who stirred not one whit from the place of the battaile. There were indeed many light horsmen, as wel Scithians, Parthians, as Moscouites, who left their ranks, and shot arrowes, and brake lances betweene the two Armies. There was a spie who brought word that *Baiazer* was on foot in the middest of his Ianizaries, where he meant to fight, that hee did not forget to mount on horsebacke, giuing order ouer all for the wants of his Armie: but purposed to fight in the middest of those Ianizaries, who are a number of trustie men, brought vp in exercises from their youth to all maner of warfare, and chosen out of all nations, the fairest and stron-

what like
Turk Ianiz-
aries be.

gest men, so as they are inuincible. By this bringing vp the which they haue had together, they do fight with a great force and courage for their Prince and Lord, who being in the middest of them, they are as in a halfe cir- cle within the Ararie. Now they were thirtie thousand men in this order, wherein *Baizet* put his principall hope: he had many other footmen, but gathered toge- ther of all sorts. His battaile of horse was verie faire, a- mounting vnto the number of an hundred and fortie thousand horse, well exercised in all maner of fightes. The Soldan of Egypt hauing aided him with thirtie thousand *Mammelues*, very good horsmen, and with thirtie thousand footmen. Their Armie in that order seemed almost as great as ours: for they were not so knit together as we were, our forces being directlie one after the other, and theirs all in a front. So the e- nemies Armie aduanced forward continually with an infinite number of cries, and ours was in great silence. After that common prayer was ended, the Emperour himselfe aduanced continually forward, beholding the first charge giuen, and caused *Axalla* to set forward after he returned into his order, continually exhort- ing his men before he left them. There could not be seene a more furious charge giuen, then was performed by the *Ottomans* vpon the Prince of *Ciarcian*, who had commandement not to fight before they came vnto him: there could not haue bene chosen a fairer plain, and where the skilfull choise of the place was of lesse aduantage for the one then for the other, but that we had the river on our left hand, the which was some ad- uantage for the Emperour, hauing giuen commandement, that in any case they should not lose the same, & that the enemies, whatsoeuer came thereof, should

not

not win it: this he did for to haue the aduantage of the hand in fight. The Emperour, who aboue all *Maximes* of warre, did yse to deale in such maner, that the ^{Tamerlan his} ene- ^{principall} mie might be the first assaulter; he had straightly com- manded the which were appointed for the first charge, to suffer the enemie for to giue the onset. Nowe (as I haue already declared) this young Prince of *Ciarcian* with his fortie thousand horse was almost wholly ouer- thrown, hauing fought as much as he could ^{The battaile} but he en- ^{betweene Tae-} tered euuen into the middest of the Ianizaries, where the ^{merla and Ba-} person of *Baizet* was, putting them in disorder, where ^{izet} he was slaine. About this time *Axalla* set vpon the with the Auatgard, where as he was not in any such dangers; for hauing surprised one of the enemies wings, he cut it all in peeces, & his footmen comming to ioyne with him, as they had bene commandied, he faced the Batal- lion of the Ianizaries. The Prince seeing the charge *Axalla* had vpon his arme, sent ten thousand horse frō his battaile for to succour him, and knit together the maine battaile of *Axalla*, and to giue once againe a charge vpon another Batallion of footmen, the which did shew it selfe, and came to ioyne with and streng- then that of the Ianizaries, who behaued themselves valiantlie for the safetie of their Prince. This fight con- tinued one houre, and yet you could not haue seene anie scattered, fighting resolutely the one against the other. You might haue seene the mountaines of hor- ses rush one against another, the men die, crie, lament, and threaten at one yerie time. The Prince had patience to see this fight ended, & when he did perceiue that his men did giue place, he sent ten thousand of his horse to ioyne againe with the ten thousand appointed for the Aierward, and commauded them to assist him,

Tamerlan his notable victory obtained against Baizet wherin he was taken prisoner.

Tamerlan his wisdom the cause of the victory, & where in performed.

at such time as hee should haue need thereof. At this verie time the Emperour chargeth, and made them giue him roome, causing the footmen to assault, ouer whom the Prince of Thanais comanded, who gaue a furious onset vpon the batallion of the Janizaries, wherein was yet the person of *Baizet*, who had sustainea a great burthen. But the multitude, and not valor, did preuaile; for as much as might bee done in fight, was by the Janizaries performed, for to proserue the person of their Prince. But in the end the horsemen, wherein was the Emperors person, gaue a newe charge, and his Auantguard was wholie knit againe vnto him, he renewed another forcing, and was fullie victorious. *Baizet* hauing retired on horsebacke out of the troupe of Janizaries wounded, fell aliue into the hands of *Axalla*, vnto whom he yelded himselfe, supposing it had bene *Tamerlan*: then *Axalla* seeing him so followed, (being for a time not knowne but for some great Lord of the *Ottomans*) twentie thousand horse did not fight at all, but only in pursuing the victorie, and they made a great slaughter. The Prince had his horse slaine vnder him with the blow of a lance, but he was soone remounted againe on horsebacke. This day the wisedome of the Emperour gaue the victorie vnto his souldiers: for the iudgement which he had in trying of the strong forces of the *Ottomans*, was the safegard of his. For if all had gone vnto the battaile in one front, surely the multitude had put it selfe into a confusio[n]: but this manner of aiding his men made euerie one profitable. The Emperour judging (like a great Captaine) of the need that euerie one of his souldiers had, so that this manner of proceeding was the getting of the victory. They accounted threescore thousand men slain of the *Ottomans*,

mans, and twentie thousand of ours. The Prince of *Tirzis* was slaine as I haue said: the head of the Georgians slaine, *Calibes* was verie sorrie hee had so easie a reckening in his Arier-ward, being very couragious, and a gentle knight: the Despote of *Seruia* was taken prisonerer, who did accompanie *Baizet*, and was a Christian: they gaue him this day of battaile much reputation. The Emperour gaue vnto him verie good entertainment, reproouing him, for that he did accompanie *Baizet* against him, who did come in fauour of his Emperour. He answered him, that it was not according to his dutie, but the prosperitie of *Baizet*, vnto whome it seemed, that all the world did bend for to subiect it selfe vnto him, and that his safetie had caused him to set forward. The Emperour presentlie therupon gaue him leaue to depart at his pleasure. He tooke care to get into his hands *Baizet* his childe: he gaue commandement that *Baizet* should bee cured, and after brought before him: who at such time as he was there, neuer made any shewe of humility. The Emperour saying vnto him, that it lay in him to cause him to lose his life; he answered: Do it, that losse shall bee my happinesse. And demanding of him what made him so rash, for to enterprise to bring into subiection so noble a Prince as was the Emperour of the Greeks. He answered him, the desire of glorie and rule. Wherfore doest thou (said the Emperour vnto him) vse so great crueltie towards men, so farre foorth that neither thou nor thine do pardō either sex or age? This do I (answered he) to giue the greater terrout to my enemies. Then said the Emperour, so shalt thou receiue the like reward: and causing him to bee conueyed againe out of his presence, he turned vnto his followers, and said,

Baizet
brought before
Tamerlan,
with his pride.

Tamerlan his
saying of
Baiazer.

behold a proud and fierce countenance, hee deserueth to be punished with crueltie, and it is necessarie that hee bee made an exemplarie punishment to all the cruell of the world, of the iust wrath of God against them. I acknowledge that God hath this day deliuered into my hands a great enemy, we must giue thanks vnto God for the same: the which was performed, being yet day: for the battaile was wonne at foure of the clocke, and there was as yet ffeue houres of daylight. The children of *Baiazer* were brought before him: he caused them to be vsed curteouslie, and as the children of an Emperour. The next day he commaunded the dead to bee buried: they found the Prince of *Tirzis* dead in the middest of the Ianizaries, where he remained enclosed. The Emperour did greatly lament this young Prince, who was his kinsman, and would haue bene one day worthie for to do him great seruice. In that battaile there died manie Captaines, & almost all the chiefe of the *Ottomans*. This was a great Battaille, the which was fought from seuen vnto foure of the clocke, in such sort that they knew not vnto whom the victorie did incline. Our Armie stayed vntill the next day, everyone causing his friends to be buried. The Prince of *Tirzis* was embalmed, and conueyed with two thousand horse vnto *Samarcand* vntil the Emperour returned. All the other dead bodies were buried at *Sanas* with all the honour that might be. *Axalla* was much grieued for his kinsman, because hee was verie well beloued of the Prince: his charge was giuen vnto one of his brethren who was verie famous; in fighting this same day, wee might iudge the euent of the matters of the world. Behold this Emperour *Baiazer*, who was, as he thought, superior to fortune,

which

which in an instant found himselfe and his estate by one battaile onlie ouerthrowne euuen vnto the lowest place, and at such time as he thought least thereof. He vsed to say, that he was iustly punished, for despising the multitude we had, for the assurance that hee had in the valour of his horsmen, and especially of his Ianizaries. Hee was three dayes (as they report) before he could be pacified, as a desperate man, seeking after death, and calling for it. The Emperour did not vs him at all curteouslie, but caused small account to bee made of him: and for to manifest that he knew how to punish the proud; vpon feauall dayes, when as he mounted on horseback, they brought this proud man vnto him, and hee serued him in steed of a foot-stoole: this did hee for to manifest the follie and arrogancie of men, and how iustlie God had humbled him. The next day the Prince marched directlie towardes *Bursia*, whither all the remainder of *Baiazer* his Armie was retired, with the Bassa *Mustapha*. All the countrie yeelded vnto vs, and the Prince caused all the holdes and fortresses to be ouerthrowne and destroyed, and punished all those which were so euill aduised as to stay vntill they were besieged. I had forgotten to declare, how hee caused the Prince of *Tirzis* bodie to be accompanied with diuers prisoners chained & tied together, whom he did send vnto *Samarcand*, the which the Prince had determinid to make great, for a perpetuall memorie of his greatnessse. Euen so had hee greatlie peopled it with people of *China*, which had bene taken in the Battailles, and of those likewise which were taken out of the two great Cities, *Paguinfou*, and *Quantoufou*. Nowe this battaile did bring great astonishment

I 2

The despaire
of Baiazer af-
ter he was ta-
ken prisoner.

Baiazer Ta-
merlan's foot-
stoole to mount
on horsebacke.

Tamerlan his
pollicie for to
increas his ci-
tie Samersand

vnto all the countries possessed by *Baizet*, and no bo-
die resisted vs, euen vnto *Bursia*, whither this armie was
fled, and therein were also two sonnes of *Baizet* verie
young. *Axalla* being alwaies aduanced forward before
our Armie, with fortie thousand horse, and an hun-
dred thousand footmen without anie carriages, who
hindred the enemies from ioyning themselues againe
together: and he made a cruell warre vpon the *Ottomans*,
deliuering the Grecians from the tyrannie of
Baizet. He approached neare vnto *Bursia*, where the *Ottomans* did not stay the comming of *Axalla*s Armie,
but only they which could not run remayned behind.

Baizet his two sonnes were sent vnto the Greekish
Emperor for to bring them vp, & to haue mercie vpon
them; the rest went vnto *Gallipoli*, for to go vnto *Andri-
nopolis*, the which they held, hauing conquered it from
the Grecians. Now the Prince (for to returne vnto my
purpose) dispatched towards the Emperour his vnkle,
and vnto the Empresse his wife one of his familiars,
called *Lieban*, Captaine of his chamber, for to carrie
him newes of this victorie, and to ioyne it also vnto
all the rest. Hee sent vnto him *Baizet* his sword
and bowe, and the caparisons of his horse, the which
was esteemed to be worth aboue two hundred thou-
sand duckats. You may easilie thinke that Prince *Li-
eban* was well entertained of the olde Emperour, and
of the young Princesse, bringing word vnto them,
that all the world did bende it selfe to make our Prince
victorios, who surely receiuied these victories from
God without insolencie, & at such time as he sent him
most glory, then did his men note him to bee least puf-
fed vp. Hee was neuer bolde, but in the day of bat-
taile, and on the eue for to commande seuerelie, and
with

Axalla armie
against the
Ottomans for
the delivery of
Greece.

Presents sent
by Tamerlan
vnto the great
Cham his vnkle

with greater maiestie. To tell you what hee was in
aduersitie, I did neuer see him in that estate: but it is
to be thought, that they which be not insolent in pro-
perty, are not faint-hearted in aduersitie. So our victo-
rious Prince marched directlie vnto *Bursia*, loaden with
spoiles and Trophees which he daylie got, departing
from the Cities which did come and yeeld themselues
vnto him; therein obseruing the same manner of pro-
ceeding the which we did in the cōquest of *China*; they
which did yeeld vnto him without fighting, were well
vsed, and the obstinate well punished, the Prince know-
ing that reward and punishment are the moderators
of common-wealthes, the one to be vsed towards the
good, and the other towards the euill. In the end we
receiuied newes by *Axalla*, that hee had receiuied *Bursia*
in the Emperors name, and how the inhabitants therof
had punished the garrisons of *Baizet*, hauing driven
them away, and slaine manie. He sent word also vnto
the Prince, that the Embassadors of the Greekish Em-
perour *Emmanuel* were come vnto him, the most hono-
rable persons of his Court, and that he had staied them
from passing any further. The Prince sent word, that
they should stay for him in that Citie: so we arriued in
short time, and all the inhabitants of the Citie came
to meeete the Emperour bare-headed, in token of bon-
dage: and the Prince entered into *Bursia* with great
magnificencie. *Axalla* with the Embassadors came to
meeete him, whom the Emperour receiuied with all the
honor that might be, and shewed vnto the all his mag-
nificencie, and the order of his Armie, whereat they
wondered: for our Armie resembled a Citie, for the or-
der that was therin, the which did bring vnto vs plenty
of all kind of victuals & marchandize. The Embassage

The effect of the Greek Emperors Embassys vnto Tamerlan.

of the Greeke Emperour was, that he submitted all his Empire and his person vnto our Emperour, and that he wold be vnto him a most faithful subiect and vassall, himselfe and his subiects, and that hee would bethinke him how to dispose of his goods, the which he offered thereby as his owne, and that he was bound for to doe this, for that he was deliuered by him from the yoke & bondage of the most cruell Tigre that might be ; that the farre countries he had passed, and the discommodities he had endured, and the losse of his men, could not be recompenced, but by the offer of his owne life and his subiects, the which he did dedicate for ever to his seruice ; that he should alwaies find therefore such faithfulness as so great a bond towards him doth deserue. Besides, the so many vertues & rare gifts, which made his name famous throughout all the world inhabited, did bind him vnto the same ; that he would attend him in his chief citie, for to deliuere it into his hands as his owne, and all the Empire of Greece, ouerwhich he commanded, to cause the same for to obey him. Nowe the Greek Embassadors looked for no lesse then to fall into bondage, thinking that to be so great which they did offer, & a morsell so delicate, that it would not bee refused, especially of a conquering Prince, as was Tamerlan ; & that accepting therof in mildnesse & friendship, was the best bargaine they could make therin but they received answere far otherwise : for the Prince with a mild countenance answered them ; that hee was not come frō so far a cuntrie, nor had taken so much paines to conquer countries ; that it was too base a thing for him to put himselfe into so great trauaile and dangers, but rather to win honor, and thereby for to make his name famous and glorious vnto all the world : therefore

The worthy answer of Tamerlan vnto the Greek Embassadors.

fore would hee make it well appare, that hee was come to aide him, being requested as a friend and allie, the which had happie successe. That his vpright meaning therein was the greatest cause that God had beheld from aboue his power, by the which he bruised the head of the most fierce enemie vnto mankind that was vnder heauen : & for to get him now an immortall glorie and eternall name, he would make free so great and flourishing a citie, gouerned by so noble and ancient a house ; that with his courage he had alwaies faith ioined, the which wold never make so great a breach in his reputatiō, that it shold be reported of him, he came The worthy
mind of Tamerlan. to help as a friend vnder the pretence to inuade the do- minions of his Allie ; that he would haue the seruice he had done of the Greek Emperors engrauen in the memorie of the posterity, to the end they might wish well vnto him and his successors, by remeining that he had done good vnto them ; that he contented himselfe to carrie away the honor and glorie thereof ; that long might he liue to gouerne his estate ; and that before his departure he should consider so well to establish him, as that hee should not fall againe into so great ieopardie, that hee deliuered into his handes the two sonnes of Baizet, to do with them as he should thinke good ; that he should be wise and prouident in well aduising himselfe hereafter ; that his good will should be alwaies most fauourable towards him. You may easily iudge what ioy these Greekish Princes received, hearing the Emperor pronounce these words, full of so great clemencie, who for that he wold not be seene to breake his faith, refused an Empire offered vnto him, and the most stately and magnificent Citie of the world. I do thinke there bee few Princes

that would performe such a part, so bee there likewise but few *Tamerlans* in the world. *Axalla* had commandement from the Prince to feast these Embassadors, and to do them all the honor that might be: one of the was sent vnto the Emperour to carrie him these newes, who looked for some cleane contrarie: but hauing receiued word thereof, then was the time to make bonfires within *Constantinople*, and the oportunitie to rejoyce with all kind of pleasures. The Greekish Emperour hauing assembled his Counsell, to know whether hee should not go vnto him and give him thankes, it was so resolued on by all the Princes of the Court.

So the Emperour was aduertised of his iourney, who was verie glad thereof, and euuen vpon the first dayes iourney *Axalla* was sent by the Emperour for to certifie him of the ioy that he conceiued to haue the good hap for to see him, as also for to conduct him euuen vnto *Bursia*, whither the Emperour vnderstanding the Greek came, went to meet him, and with all kinds of magnificences, they were one whole day together. The next day the Greekish Emperour tooke his leaue of the Prince, who did accompanie him out of the Citie.

The meeting of Tamerlan and the Greek Emperor at Bursia.

Nowe the Emperour had as great a desire as might be, to see this so famous a Citie, as was *Constantinople*, but he would not goe thither but as a priuate person; the which *Axalla* handled without making anie shew thereof, desiring to be received thereinto priuately by the Greekish Emperour. The which was accomplished with all the familiarity possible, and therein was no rare and excellent thing which was not shewed vnto the Emperour. The Greekish Prince hauing aduised himselfe of all the meanes to doe him pleasure, & vnto all them which did accompanie him,

who

Bonfires made in Constantinople for the worthy answer received from Tamerlan.

who were in a manner all apparelled after the Greek fashion, in somuch as they were greatly astonisched to vnderstand that we had bene there. The Greek Emperour was curious to shew vnto our Emperour all the faire gardens, the which be all along the sea coast, a league or two from *Constantinople*, and hee conducted him in priuate companie, so as fife or sixe dayes were spent with all the mirth that might be possible. The Prince would often say, he had neuer seene a fairer citie; that this was indeede the citie (considering his faire and rich situation) which ought to commaund all the world.

The rare things in Constantinople.

He wondered at the costly buildings of the Temples, the faire engrauen pillers, the faire Pirimades of wonderfull height, the which the Emperour *Constantine* had caused to be brought thither out of *Egypt*, and the making of the faire gardens: and he was wont to say, that he did nothing repent him of his voyaige, for that he had preferued from fire and bloud, so noble a Citie as that was: he greatly commended the mildnesse and courtesie of the Greekish Emperour. Now the Greek Emperour knowing the Prince very curious for faire horses, he gaue vnto him thirtie of the fairest, strongest, and readiest that might be gotten, with the most rich cloth of gold, and excellent silke that could be seene.

The Greek Emperor gave vnto Tamerlan faire horses.

The Greek sent likewise to gratifie all the Princes and Lords of the armie with presents, and caused all things to be deliuered vnto them, the which he thought to be necessarie for the armie. So as hauing rested almost fifteene dayes, we beganne to thinke vpon the accomplishing of our purposes: and after a straight friendship was sworne betweene the two Princes, our Emperour determined before he returned, to make the *Soldan of Egypt* know his power, who had giuen ayde vnto Ba-

The Empresse
delivered of a
goodly boy.

izet against him, to the end that all the world should know, that he was milde and courteous vnto his friends, and vnto his enemies terrible and fearefull. So we departed from *Bursia*, hauing deliuered the same into the handes of the Greeke Emperour, and hauing driven out all the *Ottomans* out of all the fortresses, and hauing left the Greeke Emperour in the same libertie, hee was before our armie came, there being nothing now in *Asia* that tooke the *Ottomans* part, vniess he had gotten vnto the mountaines or passed ouer into *Europe*, so fearefull was our armie become by the victorie obtained against *Baizet*. *Andronicus Paleologus*, nephew vnto the Greeke Emperour, followed our Emperour with ten thousand horse, the which the Greeke Emperour deliuered vnto him, for the warre which he enterprised against the *Soldan* of *Egypt*, with whom he had often fought. Now for to accōplish the Emperors good hap, he receiued newes frō his court, that the Empresse was deliuered of a goodly boy: for the which were made bonfires, and great reioycing in the Army. He had also newes how all was quiet in his estate, and the old Emperour his vnkle in good health, the which was one of the things did most comfort him: for he feared especially least the old Prince should die in his absence, & by this meanes some trouble might arise within his estate, by some great men, and certaine fauourites which were neare vnto the old Emperour. Notwithstanding they which had played the fooles in his absence, were so well punished, that (as I thinke) others should take thereby example, & it is a generall rule, that after a Prince hath once his weapons in his hands, there will be no great revolting in his absence, nor nouelties within his countrie, how farre soever he be seuered. For first and for-

most

most all the seditious and ambitious fellowes, do ordinarily follow him vnto the warre, and moreouer he that is on horsebacke is feared. On the contrarie part, whensoeuer a Prince is softly and effeminate, his souldiers which are not employed, do go vnto him that hath any discontentment, or rather who is desirous of raigning: so as the Prince being found vnarmed, before he hath made an Armie, and gathered together his garrisons, the seditious haue alreadie plaied well their parts, and the mischiefe hath entred very farre. There were sixe moneths passed since we departed frō *Samarcand*, and it gricued many that the Emperour would not returne into his countrie: insomuch as this being declared vnto the Prince by *Axalla*, it was thought conuenient the Prince should againe review the order of his armie, and should speake vnto his souldiers, causing a generall review to be made of his armie, and that this same might giue them the greater courage for to endure all discommodities for the seruice of the Prince. So being come vnto *Calestria*, a generall review was commaunded, the Prince being himselfe there in person, where hee spake first vnto the Parthians in this manner: I can not beleue my *Tamerlan* his oration vnto his souldiers at *Calestria* persuasives, to follow him vnto new enterprises

Emperour hath finished his victories through the valor of another Nation, & not by his own: & consider what reproch you shall bring vnto ours, renoumed by so great successe obtained against so many and sundrie warlike people. You my souldiers, whose reputation flieh through all the world, shall I beleue this of you? I will not, neither ought I to beleue it: therefore follow me, and let vs go and assault the *Mamelues*, who you know of long time haue opposed themselues (how farre soever from vs) against our happinesse, hauing ioyned themselues vnto the *Ottomans* for our destruction. Would you that I should punish their rashnesse without you? Would you that the Scithians and my allies, should haue part in my victories, and in the meane time, you should go rest your selues, and lose the glorie alreadie gotten? The Prince had no sooner made an end, but they all cryed with a loud voice, that they wold liue and die with him, and as they followed him into China, so wold they also follow him throughout all the world: but they besought him to haue regard vnto their woundes, to comfort their old age, and that he would giue the hope of rest: the which the Prince promised vnto them. Vnto the others the Emperour spake nothing at all, for they were very glad to haue this glorie ouer the Parthians, in perciuing them willing to returne, insomuch as when the Prince came to passe before the Scithian horsemen, they all cryed in their language: Victorious Emperour what doest thou? march forward, for we will follow thee. The which did greatly content the Emperour. Now the Parthians and Scithians were the principall forces the Prince had in his armie: now the Emperour did nourish wisely emulation betweene them, which of them should best manifest his

Tamerlan his
care of his souldiers verie
commendable and imitable.

faith-

faithfull affection. The Prince commanded that the sick and wounded should be viewed throughout all the armie, and that the Treasurer of the wars should distribute money among the companies, ouer and aboue the ordinarie pay due vnto every souldier: so our armie departed, and in the auantguard with *Axalla* was placed *Andronicus* together with him, for to leade the head of the armie: and it was reported vnto the Emperour, that the *Soldan* of Egypt prepared forces from all parts, for to resist the power which came against him, but hee knew that he should haue much to doe, and that it was very hard to stoppe a victorious armie, wherein there were such a multitude of men, who had ouerthrown the strongest and most warlike Monarch that was in all Asia. Insomuch as this gat a great terror vnto the *Mamelues*. But the *Soldan*, who commanded ouer them at that present was a young Prince, who had bene chosen for the great vertue and courage which was in him, rather then for his great experiance in warlike affaires, insomuch as he had not as yet since his election shewed his affection, and as little his valour vnto his subiects: he had indeede his courage puffed vp, by seeing himselfe through this choise Lord of many great cities well fortifiid, so as he resolued to be ouerthrown brauely. In such sort as he put his hope in the winning of a battell, fro the which what chance soever did happen, he might retire himself at any time into a place of such aduantage, that he might haue the means to hazard again another, and hope thereby for a reuenge. Whereof the Emperour was aduertised, & after he had conferred with *Axalla* & *Andronicus*, for to be aduised whither he shold direc the head of his army, for to constraine the enemie the sooner to come vnto battell: it was in the end concluded

The Soldan
his braue reso-
lution.

that he should passe by *Caramania*, directly vnto *Genolache*, the which was the first citie of the *Mamelues* Empire, being one of the *Soldans* frontier townes which did separate him from the Turke, euen there where the peace was sworne betwixt them, the which *Baizet* had sought, to the end he might haue aide frō him to stregthen himselfe thereby against the army which came vp on him. So this place was well defended by the *Soldan*, and it was well fortified: *Axalla* aduancing forward his auantgard did summon the same to yeeld, or else they shold receiue the iust reward of their rashnesse & folly. They made answere, that they were children of obedience, & had comandement to die therein. And that willingly they would there endure vntill death for their Prince & country. This wilfulness put the Prince into great choler (who since he departed from his kingdom, had not seene any one place which brought not to him their keies twentie leagues off before he came vnto the) to see a meane citie dare to stay his comming, & for to prepare to let his army. The which the Emperour perciuing, he commanded *Axalla* to march on, & to lodge neare *Aleppo*: the which he summoning, did yeeld it self, hauing no other then the inhabitants within the same. The Prince in the meantime, prepared himself vnto the siege, whereto hauing caused his footmen to march, & his artillery to bee planted, there was an assault giuen, which was brauely defēded by the within, & there were of our men slaine to the nūber of 1200. The Emperour greatly stirred, determined to assault the once againe, & hauing giuen a fresh assalt, wherin the Prince of *Thamis* was wounded, our men lodged vpon the wall, and leauing no respite vr. to them within, they killed a great nūber of the. The Prince vnderstanding that the *Soldan* had

had promised the aide, whereof he was well aduertised, and did certainly know that he marched forward, he supposed that he had committed a fault, in causing *Axalla* to aduance so farre, so as he determined to set forward to ouertake him, hoping by that meanes to surprise the enemie, who came directly towards *Axalla* for to fight with him. But the enemie did not looke for him so soone: so hauing left all his carriages behind at the siege, where the Prince of *Thamis* remained with thirtie thousand men only, the rest he caused to march with him without any baggage vnto *Bogras*; thither did *Axalla* send him word that the *Soldan* had passed the riuer at *Confincan*, and that he came for to aide the besieged: and it was reported that hee had 74000. horse, and an hundred thousand footmen. Now the Emperour being arriued at *Aleppo*, vnderstood where the enemie was, & determining with himselfe to surprise him, he caused *Axalla* to aduance forward with his auantgard, himselfe staying halfe a day, and then presently he followed his auantguard. *Axalla* hauing set forward some fifteene hundred horse, they were encountered and almost all slaine, he not being able to aide them as he desired, by reason of the vnfittnesse of the countrie, and judging that they were compassed about, he did not assist them. Now the enemie's thinking to deale with none but those which were at *Aleppo* led by *Axalla*, they came forward vnto the fight ill aduised: so as *Axalla* had them vpon him before he supposed; he aduertised the Emperour to come forward, & sent him word that he wēt vnto the battaile, but that he would dally with the enemie as long as hee could, to the end hee might haue leasure to draw neare and assist him, and that he would not faile to chuse his place of battel as much as he could.

for his aduantage, whilst he looked for him, he set forward presently twenty thousand horse with speed vnder the leading of *Calibes*. In the meane time the enemie by reason of the place which was narrow, & a valley wherin his men could not march, but in single ranke, he aduanced not so soone: the which *Axalla* supposed, for otherwise he would haue retired, but in the best manner he might vnto the Emperor. So he determined to chuse a place for the battell, & to make his men for to fight in small troupes, to entame the enemy in coming down the mountaine, perciuing that his purpose was to take his place for the battell at the foot of the same mountaine. This sport endured 2. or 3. houres, vntill *Calibes* came with 20000. horse for the assistance of *Axalla*, who had also full 30000. more; *Andronicus* betweene 8. and 10. thousand, the most part Albanois, who were good horsemen: he requested the first charge, the which *Axalla* did grant vnto him, being loath to discontent him; in the which hauing fought valiantly, & ouerthrown & slaine many of the enemis, hee was one of the first that was slain, for want of being aided by his men. A Prince surely of such a courage, as did much grace him, and who verily in this his youth, did follow the honour & nobilitie of the blotid of them from whom he was descended. *Axalla* assisted him with all his power, who were in a manner all Parthians or Christians in the Princes pay, who gaue a great shooke vpon the *Soldans* troupes, and passing through them, he found directly before him all their footmen, he busied himselfe in fighting with the: in the meane time a troupe of fve & twentie thousand horse did set vpon Prince *Calibes*, they say, that therein was the *Soldan* himselfe, who fought the one against the other very obstinately, and in this meane space

A battell be-
tweene the Sol-
dan of Egypt
and the Empe-
ror Tamerlan.

Axalla

Axalla fought with these footmen, which hee leauing halfe ouerthrowne sounded a retrait, and seeing Prince *Calibes* hardly beset, he went directly towards him, and perciuing the place where the enemies had the greatest aduantage & his men the worst, he charged this maine power on the flanke; which 15000. horsemen seeing, who were behind these footmen, whom the *Soldan* had commanded that they should not fight but vpon need, they came vpon *Axalla* on that side he had giuen his charge, & setting furiously vpon him, they fought a lōg time, so as he was wounded, his horse slaine vnder him, & himself taken prisoner. Which being reported *Axalla taken prisoner.* vnto the Emperor by one that fled; he coming forward with as much speede as he could, was greatly vexed, hauing his chiefe confidence in this Captaine. This caused the Emperor to make the more hast, who if he had not come in so good time, that day had made an ende of his good fortune: but hauing commanded 10000. horse to aduance before him & giue an onset, he assisted the with 25000. of his most faithfull horsemen, hauing vpon his wings 20000. horse of his aiders. The *Soldan* did not see this maine power, by reason of the valley they came in, & he was greatly astonished for to behold the rest, during the time that Prince *Calibes* & *Axallas* men did fight. Behold in an instant 10000 horse which set vpon the *Mamclus*, who were almost maisters of the field. The Prince also aduanced forward with all his footmen & horsemen. The *Soldan* not being able to resist so great a force, he sounded a retrait, finding the falte he had committed, seeing all the whole army vpon him. Now *Axalla*, being ouerthrown by him who held him prisoner, was on foot, & he was moued againe on horseback: his wōud was but a small matter: the Emperour followed the victory three

Tamerlan his
victorie vpon
the Soldan.

K

leagues. It is reported, that the *Soldan* had bene thrise mounted on horseback during the battell, so well did he performe the duty of a good souldier & captaine, but the fault he had committed was great, for he did not marke that all our army did not follow. We cōmited another fault also, in so much aduancing forward our auantgard, which was like to haue cost vs deare: for had it not bene for the art *Axalla* vsed, the Emperor had neuer come in time to assist him: but we may say that fortune the mis-
tris of all did bring to passe, that our faults were of-
ten turned into stratagems of war, so great hap did accō-
pany our Prince: so his comming was the victory of his
mē. Behold how this war was much shortned against the
opinion of many: for it was knowne how the *Soldan* was
counselfed (& wisely) to draw this war into length, not-
withstanding he could not shun his ill hap. Our Armie
could not lie in one place for the great multitude, & es-
pecially the coūtry being also in many places vnfruitful.
These newes being come to the Prince of *Thanais* at *Gon-
lach*, and he making the same knowne vnto the enemies,
they were greatly astonished, as soone had he cōmande-
ment from the Prince to punish thē well for their rash-
nesse, and to put all vnto the sword, without any mercy,
to giue terror vnto those which would wilfully resist
his forces, and also he wold haue it to be an example vnto
others: which was done, being won by assault, their
courage failing them, by reason of the losse their men
had received, as also for that the nūber of their souldiers
was much diminished by the fight giuen vnto thē night
& day. The Prince wold not réturne back againe, but a-
bode at *Aleppo*, where the Prince of *Thanais* came & ioy-
ned with him, not hindring *Axalla* frō aduacing forward
with the horsemen of the auantgard, to the end that the
Soldan

Soldan shold haue no respit to take breathi, who was reti-
red with 40000. horse. There died in the battell ful 80000.
men, & no men of marke but *Andronicus* & three *Parchia*
Captaines of great estimatiō, the *Soldans* cariages were
the next day taken, wherein was great riches. He made
dispatches vnto all his allies, & also vnto the Greek Emperor,
cōforting him for the losse of Prince *Andronicus*,
as also for to receiue order frō him for a new cōmander
ouer the Grecques. He sent also some for to carrie newes
of his victory into all his kingdoms. In this meane space
the *Soldan* withdrew himselfe into *Egypte*, & fortified all
his cities, demāding aide of mē & mony of all his allies.
He deuided the rest of his army, where he thought was
needtherof; he burnt & spoiled before our army, sparing
no thing, to hinder vs from passing any further, a thing
which brought vnto vs great discōmodity, & wāt began
tobe in our army, it was so great: in so much as it beho-
ued the Prince to make a review of all his army, to see
what vnprofitable mēbers were therin, & to sēd thē from
the same. He was aduised to deuide his army into three
parts, the first vnder the Prince, the other vnder *Axalla*,
and the thirdvnder *Calibes*, who shold cōduct the cari-
ages with one part of the footmen, which shold bend di-
rectly towards *Persia*, coasting the riuier *Euphrates*, and in
that space put al the coūtry there vnder the Princes obe-
dience, were he shold find nothing to stop him, our ar-
my being aduanced forward, which ouer-ran the same.
So the Emperour tooke the coast of the sea, *Axalla* the
coast of *Arabia*. There was with the Prince 6000. horse
and 100000. footmē, with *Axalla* 40000. horse & 50000
footmen. *Calibes* had thirtie thousand horse, and fiftie
thousād footmē, insomuch as all the earth was couered
with men: so as by means that good gouernmēt was ob-

The Emperour
Tamerlan his
army deuided
into three sever-
all parts mar-
ched sundry
ways.

Certaine Cities
submit them-
selves vnto the
Emperour Tamer-
lan.

Damascus ta-
ken by assaile.

serued in our Army, victuals for men was there in great plenty, & for the horses were many pastures. Now the *Soldan* had alwayes *Axalla* following him, but in the end he deuided his army, where the most part of his men forsooke him: they say he retired into *Arabia*, where our great army could not lie. He often shewed himself with some 4000. horse for to hinder *Axalla*, who hauing the smalleſt troupe did follow him more neare then we. All the cities vpon the ſea coaſt ſubmitted themſelues vnder the Emperors obedience, as *Magata*, *Aman*, *Tortofa*, *Gibelleto*, *Barut*, *Nephthalim*. *Damascus* hauing receiued a garrison, refuſed to opē the gates, & the Lord layd ſiege thereto. This was a ſtrong city, wherinto the *Soldan* had put the Prince *Zamadzen*, who indeuored to defend himſelfe, but we hauing planted all ſorts of engines, we ouerthrew much of the wal. The Prince of *Thanaia* gaue th' affaile, & wan the city, there remaining only a caſtel of wonderful ſtrength & inuincible, but there being a great multitude of men retired into the ſame, they died for hunger. In the end being willing to yeeld, the Prince would not receiue the vnto mercy, for to make the ſeele what it was to hold out againſt him: ſo that dying with famine they yeelded vnto his mercy, & were all taken prisoners or ſlaine, & ſo puniſhed for their raſhneſſe. This cauſed that 30. leagues off, they brought vnto vs the keyes of their cities: for they which did ſo were not any waies mo- leſted, but only in paying the charges of the army. This city was no ſooner take, but we turned our head directly vnto *Jerufale*, at ſuch time as they did driue out the *Soldans* garrison. The like did almoſt all *Indea* alſo, & came to ſubmit themſelues vnto the Emperour, who vſed them very graciously, reſtored vnto them their liberty, promiſed them for to viſit the Sepulcher of *Iefus Christ*, ac-
cording

cording to the holy cuſtoms of our law, & with this ho- nōur & reuerence he granted vnto them whatſo euer they demanded. We came vnto *Coracin*, the which citie had receiued commandement to ſtand firme, & wherin the *Soldan* had left a garrison of 6000. men, who refuſed to fight luſtily: but at the length, the ſame was aſtoniſhed, ſeeing the ſiege layd before it, & that we were de- termined to take it, & hauing approched the wals, they beſought mercy, which was granted vnto them. The Prince left a garrison thereiſ, for to ſtop the roaſes that certaine *Mameluēs* made vpon our army, departing from *Nafua*, from whence the Prince ſent a coman- dement vnto *Calibes* to beſiege Cities, and to ſet himſelfe againſt thoſe forces which ioyned theſelues to- gether neare vnto him, the which kept the comming of vi- ctuals frō the army. In the meane time the *Soldā* hauing faimed to draw towards *Arabia*, he went towards *Caire* in *Egypt*, oppoſing himſelfe againſt vs only by ſmall incu- ſions, ſpoyleſ continually the corne before vs, endeuoring to keepe our Army from viſtuals; but our light horſemen did preſſe ſo neare vpon them, that he could not execute that hee would haue done: the people alſo who willingly ſubmitted them ſelues, did hinder the waste. The Emperour being come vnto *Miferill*, he did forbiſ the Army to paſſe ouer the riuer of *Jordan*, for to preſerue that countrie, from whence came great ſtore of viſtuals vnto the Armie, and himſelfe rode vnto *Jerufalem* with certaine horſemen for his guard, hee determined like a godly Prince to viſit the *Sepulcher* (the which is had in ſo great reuerence of al the natiōs) and there for to make his offeriſgs; and being ar- riued into *Jerufalem*, there hee was receiued of the inhaabitantes: he thereiſ ſought out all the antiquities

*Coracin yeeld-
ed vpon Com-
poſition.*

*Tamerlan his
comming vnto
Jerufalem, and
his godly reue-
rent behau-
our thereiſ.*

of the ancient Temple, & would be conducted into all the places wherin *Iesus Christ* had preached, euen as the Pilgrims do; & seeing the Sepulcher, he gaue thereunto great plēty of riches, & precious gifts; two things made him wōder; which was that he demāding of certaine religious men where the body of their Lord was, they answered, in heauen at the right hand of God; he asked of vs where our Prophet was placed: the Cherit who was neare vnto him answered, it was true, and that he held the chieffest place in heauen, because he was there before him, and that as he was borne of heauen, vnto heauen he was returned, hauing there first taken the place. Then kneeled he downe, and euer after had his name in great reuerence; and when hee was returned vnto *Samarcant* hee builded a most rich Church vnto his honour, and wold be heard to speake dayly of his miracles. And as he did visit al, he came vnto the place, where *Iesus Christ* hauing left his disciples, went vp into heauen: in which place, there is a print of his foote, he greatly wondered thereat, and the story being recited vnto him of the Pilgrime, who had beene rauished in spirit, he accounted him very happie. *Axalla* came thither also, and all the Christians who did accompanie him, hauing conducted his army vnto *Tema*, for to set it forward into *Egypt*. There had the Emperour newes that the *Soldan* gathered forces on all sides, and was entred into *Alexandria*, which is one of the chieffest Cities of *Egypt*. All the people were verie glad to see our Prince honour the holy places, but the *Iewes* did greatly blame him for so doing, but they were a people whom the Prince misliked, and called them the accursed of God. *Axalla* gaue great gifts and honour vnto the holy Sepulcher. Now the Prince did greatly honour them

Cherit.

Tamerlan cal-
le the Iewes
accursed of
God.

them that were devout, and afterwards returned from thence with commandement that they should aduance forward the head of his army directly vnto *Damieta*, the wiche was reported vnto the Emperour, to be in expugnable, as well in respect of the Castell, as for that the *Soldan* had put many souldiers into the same. Now this is a Citie vpon the sea coast, and one of the chieffest of *Iudea*, so as the same was in great reputation, for that it had held out many great sieges, in so much as many did dissuade the Prince frō going thither, but rather for to cause his army to march higher, and not inclose himselfe within a corner. But the Emperour who thought nothing could hinder his good fortune, would needs go thither, and hauing commanded *Axalla* to set vpon it, he caused the rest of the army to march thither. *Axalla* hauing summoned them, and declared to the inhabitants, who were most of them Christians, the mildnesse, & curtesie of the Prince, who himself was, & what religion he held, causing many of the Greeke Emperours captaines to speake vnto them, and made them vnderstand the miserie wherein they were obeying barbarous *Mores* & *Mamelus*: they determined to venter their liues, for to put all the *Mamelus* out of the citie, and all those that fauored the *Soldan*. Damieta won
by intelligence
in the night. So as they hauing taken arms in the night, made themselves maisters of one quarter of the citie, and deliuering one gate to *Axalla*, all the *Mamelus* were either slaine or taken, and the citie put vnder the obedience of the Prince. These newes being come vnto the Emperour, who was alreadie marching forward, made him hope for a good ende of his affaires: for to leaue such a citie within the armes of the riuver *Nilus*, and himselfe to passe on further, would be the destruction of his

Pr. & life with
flaues of Caire.

army. He trusted also that by this haueyn viuctuals should come vnto him from all the parts of Greece, according as the Emperour *Emannell* had promised him, and wherein he nothing failed him: vnto the which the Prince hauing made his entrie, there were left in garisson two thousand souldiers of the Emperour *Emannell* his forces, and there he placed a Gouernour, and caused them to take an oth of obedience, the Prince desirring to become maister thereof, for to hold the *Soldan* thereby the more short. The Prince found this citie to be very faire; they of *Arisa* did the like, and he put garrisons into all the walled townes vpon the sea coast, for to make viuctuals come (as I haue sayd) conveniently vnto vs: for this was the Princes chieffest care, considering the multitude of his army, the which had felt no want thereof. The Prince hauing remained a space at *Damieta*, he caused his auantguard to march towards *Alexandria*, and hauing passed ouer the riuer, euen in an instant, he went directly vnto *Caire*, a thing which did greatly astonish the *Soldan*, who made provision for the defence of *Alexandria*; as soone as he vnderstood these newes, he vsed so great diligence, that he entered thereinto euen as we approached the same, and he himselfe in person determined for to defend it, and for to keepe vs from passing ouer the riuer of *Nilus* for to go vnto *Alexandria*; they reported that the *Soldan* entred thereinto with fortie thousand horse, and threescore thousand foot-men. The Emperour could not beleue it: and then was our army at *Buldar* feuen leagues from *Caire*, at such time as the *Soldan* arriued there, who came thither in necessarie time: for the flaues (whereof there be an infinite number) began to settle themselves for to rebell, and had entered into

the

*The Siege of
Caire.*

the same without doubt, the which was very euill newes for the aduancement of our affaires: for to remaine long time before it was impossible for vs to do, by reaso of the want of viuctuals: yet the Prince notwithstanding all this did not leaue to draw neare vnto it, and encamped with all his army neare vnto the same, hauing caused a great trench to be made for to couer his horse-men, and thereby for to lodge his army the more safely. So the Prince during that time, caused diuerse onsets to be made, the which he did, bothe to know the enemies countenance, as also for to cause thereby flaues to issue out, who did bring vs newes in what estate they were, against whom we alwayes had the better, and shut the into the city. Now it happened that the Emperour one day thought good to shew his army before the city, for to trie whether the enemiy had a desire to come vnto a day of battell, and to view what forces he had, and indeed to seeke occasion for to fight: he hoped also that if the enemies did put out all their army, some reuolt would happen within the citie, as well by the flaues vnto whom liberty was promised, as of many discontented with the insolencies of the *Mamelus* whom the *Soldan* had caused to enter with him. So the Emperour was betimes in battell array, but no body issued out, contrary to our expectation. The Emperour in the meane while viewed the situation of the city, and shewed vnto them his power, hauing certified the inhabitants that he sought not their destruction, but only of the *Mamelus* his enemies: so as the same being declared by certain flaues of the nation, who fained to fly from our army, he bethought the of the meanes how to drive out the *Mamelues*: the which being made knowne vnto the Emperour by the flaues, he determined to aduance forward his foot-men within halfe a league of the city, and there to encampe the same

determining so thereby the more to fauour the *Mores* enemies vnto the *Mamelues*, who promised to take arms in his behalfe. The Emperour hauing sent for the principall leaders of his army, he propoūded vnto them that which he had determined for to do, the which he did as well for to haue their aduise, as also if the same were concluded vpon, for to make them know his pleasure, and the order wherein they shold march: and he declared vnto his Captains how he was come on a sudden before this city, not imagining the *Mamulus* shold enter into the same, knowing there being none but the inhabitants he might easilly haue takē it, & out of the same draw cōmodities for the maintenāce of his army: but the sudden arriual of such an army did put great difficulties before his eyes. The first was that he could not long remaine before the City, for the want of victuals, and the season by reason of the excessiue heat was very hurtfull vnto his men, for that they had not bene thereunto accustomed; that he doubted least he going about to famish others, mortality shold ioyne it selfe vnto the faineine, & so come into his army; that he had bouned his enterprises vpon that part betweene the Cities of *Caire* and *Alexandria*, and this being taken he would returne victorious into his countrie, and loaden with the spoyles of all *Asia*; that it were dishonourable for him to recoile before the enemies Armie with that

*Perswasive
reasons of Ta-
merlan for to
stow his soul-
diers not to
returne before
they had won
the City of
Caire from the
Souldan.*

victorie which he had obtained, a victorious Armie before a conquered and flying Armie, the which had done nothing else but seeke the deserts and strong places since the time of the ouerthrow that the same had received, not daring for to shew it selfe before ours, very neare these three monethes; that at this present it was within a great Citie, acknowledging that therein

therin they had a great aduantage. But on the other side in number of souldiers he was much their superior, so as the forces being greater which he had, did counteruiale the enemies wals; and that he did not doubt but our vi-
ctorious arms already ouer the, wold be a terror to make them fly before vs, as soone as we came to hand-blowes with the; that it was a thing whereon the enemy did not depend, in thinking himself invincible by meanes of the trēches they had made within their streets, who do you thinke will arme themselues when as they shall see vs to set vpon them vnlooked for. I hold opinion we shall haue a happie ende: for it is a more honourable thing then shamefully to retire and shew our backes vnto the enemie, who haue so often seene our faces vnto their hurt. A thing which the great God hath granted vs, hauing bene these twentie years passed in cōtinual warres against so many warlike nations, notwithstanding by you euen the Parthian name hath bene victorious. To be short, in doing of this we must by that meanes bury our reputation and all our victories, if we should retire this day shamefully from before this Citie, the which will come out after vs, hindring vs from victuals on euerie side, and spreade a rumour of our disgrace, so as they which do now incline vnto vs, will make head against vs, and they which do obey wil rebell against vs: & if we hauing lost this occasion, wold bend our selues against them, they will presently run into their dennes, so as on euerie part we shall haue great difficulties. Aduise your selues herein, for there are but two waies; ei-
ther to raise the siege and retire before their armie, or else to assault them. The Prince by his speech made all the Captaines astonished, not knowing well which of the matches for to take, considering the waightinesse of the matter. This was also a fight which they had not

tried for to force an army within their wals, notwithstanding they must preferre their reputation before death, and run into all hazardes. At the last the Prince seeing that none did speake, he commanded *Axalla* for to begin and to declare his aduise, who did rise vp, and after he had taken leaue of the Emperour to shew his opinion, he sayd aloude. My Lord, what is this thou dost of vs demand, hast not thou alwayes tried the courages of thy Captaines and souldiers, preferring the honour of thy reputation, before their owne liues? What is it then thou requirest at our handes? leade vs against the *Mamelues*, & thou shalt see whether the loue and true affection to thy seruice, and desire of the immortality of thy name be any thing diminished? Dost thou thinkē (according to thy speech vnto vs) that the wals do hinder our valour, & the force of our horses? The first horse of ours that shall put his head within *Caire* will give entrance for all the Army. *Axalla* had no soone made an end of speaking, but all the Captaines cried that they might be led vnto the fight, & that they were ready to die for the greatnessse and glory of their Prince. The Emperour hauing thanked the, began to declare the maner of the order he would his army should march in: he deuided his footmen into three parts, the Lieutenant generall of the footmen marched with 30000.mē. The Prince of *Thanais* had the head assisiting him with 5000 footmen about his person, and all his horsemen after him, this day all the horsemen being reserued to attēd vpon his person, hauing giuen vnto *Axalla* in whom he had his chiefest trust, the charge of the whole army, who was on foot. Now the Princes determination was to take one of the Cities of *Caire*, & there to encampe himselfe, & so to aduance forward by litle and litle

Confutation.

*Axalla his
worthy speeche
vnto Tamerlā
thereupon.*

litle fighting with the enemy. Now within the city the which was ouer against vs, was the *Soldan* encamped & all his forces: he had 60000. footmen & 50000. horse, wherof there were 30000 *Mamelues*, braue men, & exercised in warlike affaires, & of whose arms we made triall in the last war; as for the footmē, they were gathered together out of *Arabia*, *Persia*, & *Libia*, with many slaues vnto whom he had giuen freedom, his experienced soldiers being ouerthrown in the last battell. The Emperor who had not declared auy thing of the hope he had in the slaues & *Mores*, did now vtter the same vnto *Axalla*. So after this conclusion was taken, the Emperor determined to giue an assault, & hauing brought his footmen vnto the place where he would haue them giue the on-set, euen vpon the face of their enemies, as soone as he did see that they had set lustily vpon their trenches, hee commanded the Prince of *Thanais* to assault them with 50000 men: this was a furious fight. In the meane time *Axalla* went along by certaine palme trees, for that he iudged the enemy had forsaken that place, to go & assist their owne men, as soone as they perceiued the Prince of *Thanais* to enter, wherein he was not deceived: for hauing found but small resistance, he passed ouer the trēches, and hauing receiued cōmandement frō the Prince that they should presently make roome for the horsemen to passe, whither (during the time he employed himself therein) the enemy sent 20000 men for to stop him; the did *Axalla* aduance forward, leauing 3000. of his men to make an end of filling vp the ditches, & himself went to the fight; he found the *Mamelues* who fought on horseback, & had almost beaten backe the Prince of *Thanais*. As soone as the way was made plaine, the 10000 horse set forward, who charged the *Mamelues* behind, where the *Soldā* himself was. Now the Emperor caused 10000

*The siege of
Caire in Egypt
by Tamerlan.*

more to aduance forward, after them he followed with all his power: then did the enemies retire vnto a second trench the which they had made in another City. The fight had continued ful the space of seauen houres, and it could not be iudged to which side the victory enclined, for they did couragiouly defend their aduantages. But the Prince hauing in the end caused a retrale to be sounded, contented himselfe in hauing driuen the enemies out of their trenches and won their lodging from them, hoping the next day to win all the rest: we possest a third part of the Citie, all the footmen lodging vpon the enemies trench, and there were continual assaults giuen, so desirous were our men to ouercome. There were slaine this day of the enemies, sixteene thousand men at the least, and of ours, betweene seuen and eight thousand. *Draguen* Lieutenant generall of the footmen was slaine with manie of his souldiers, for he sustained all the brunt of the fight, the strategeme of warres vsed by *Axalla*, and his judgement was for vs a great aduantage. The Prince about night hauing aduertisement that the *Soldan* would retire, & passe ouer the riuier, he foorthwith commanded ten thousand horse to lodge themselues that night for garding of the riuier bankes. But the *Soldan* thinking those to be all, the horsemen durst not passe ouer, hauing bene informed that the whole army was there. The break of day being come, the Prince caused them to begin to fill vp the enemys trēches, & to set his army in batel aray. The Prince of *Thanaïs* did once againe begin it, & *Axalla* vpon another side; but after they had fought, the *Soldan* determined for to make a retrale & so to go out of the city. For these footmen did so obstinately preesse on vnto the battell, and after he had performed his indeuor seeing our men already

already maisters of the trenches, doubting lest he shold haue our horsemen vpō him likewise, he determined to go out and encamp himselfe all along the riuier, and to accomplish the purpose he had failed in the night. They determined to retire vnto *Alexandria* if he could passe ouer the water, and hauing withdrawne his men from the fight, as well as he could, he encamped him between the water and the City, for to passe ouer the same. As the Prince had passed ouer the trēches, the souldiers killed and sacked all the whole city as conquerers. The Prince hauing present knowledge of the *Soldans* flight, setled himselfe to follow him with his horsemen, who onely were in order, and hauing knit together as he might, some of his footmen busied in the spoyle of the city, and being informed that the enemy passed the wa-ter with great diligence, he set forward directly towards him, for to stop him vpon a narrow cawsey, where were certaine marishes made for to stay the ouer flowing of *Nilus*: but the *Soldan* had opposed 12. of 15. thousand men whom he called his slaues, to fauour his passage, who were his best souldiers, & stood firmly, the place being greatly for their aduantage. Now our footmen with whom it be hooued vs to fight, were busied in pillage, and did come forward softly and vnwillingly, leauing the city the which others did spoile: so as the Prince was driuen to promise to regard especially and to acknowledge their good seruice. Now as soone as they were come, they forced the enemies, but not without great losse, they seeing that they could not resist so greet a multitude and such a force, they cast themselues to swimming, and made an honourable retrale: for euery man had his weapons in one of his hands, and with the other hand swimming, did arriue vpon the other banke,

Great Caire
won by Ta-
merlan -

*The courage of
the Soldans
men swim-
ming ouer the
river of Nilus,
with one hand,
& their weap-
on in the other.*

one part of the horsemen were cut in peeces, and the other drowned. This was the ende of the *Soldan*, who staying a long time (as it is reported) did busie himselfe in beholding from farre, how they did spoile this great city. Now when the night came vpon vs, hee thought our men should be sufficiently troubled in enjoying of the victorie, without following of him. It is reported, he sayd vnto his souldiers, in comforting of them, that they were not men which had conquered them, but rather some God, so great wisedome, force, and valour, did hee obserue in our souldiers. There went away with him some eighteene thousand horse, the rest were fled sundrie wayes, and manie drowned. On the morrow hee withdrew himselfe directly vnto *Alexandria*, making much of those slaues which remained aliue, who had so well endeuored themselves for the safegard of their Maister, ha-
ving resisted the force of all our Armie for the space of two long houres, yea euen after they had made such a glorious and memorable a retraite. The Prince caused diuerse of those which had bene taken in the bat-
telle to come before him, and gratified them in what hee might, hee gaue them presentes, and desired to be serued by them, but they all refused that offer: notwithstanding the Emperor (seeing their fidelity towards their maister) did not forbear to give them liber-
tie to go and find againe the *Soldan*: for the Em-
perour did make himselfe to be noted in his victories for some notable act of clemencie, a thing verie well beseeming great men: for bountie is the part which maketh vs to beloued, and valour and force maketh vs to be feared and admired. The Emperour after he had beheld this spectable withdrew himselfe, and caused his

The Soldan his speech vnto those about him after his overthrow at Caire.

The faithfulness of the Soldans men to-wards their Maister.

Tamerlan mercifull.

his pavillion to be placed betwene the riber of *Nile* and the *Citic*, for to assisse his armie, the whiche did fore-
see was easie to be ouercome, during the sacking of so
rich & wealthy a citie. That night he mounted on hor-
backe, and accompanied with some of his most fau-
thfull seruants, did ride through all his campe, visiting his
guards himselfe, making much of his souldiers, and e-
mending them for their endeuours: on the morrow he
made his entry into the city, where there was speech of
receiving the *Castell*, wherein the *Soldans* had put their
riches, for it was their ancient dwelling: the whiche the
Prince did in his own person, and lodged himselfe with
all his armie round about the same fortresse, the which
is at one of the ends of the citie; hauing giuen coman-
dement to cease the pillage, the same hauing continued
the space of 24. houres, and euery souldier being also
enjoyed by the same proclamation to returme vnder
their ensignes, and lodge in the armies quarter. The
Prince comandide the next day, that they should set at
libertie all the inhabitants of the citie, and that head-
judged none vnto bondage. There was within this city
an infinite quantity of riches and treasure found, the
which they report the *Soldan* Princes haue of long time
kept there, not being suffered to employ any part there-
of, but vpon great necessitie. And this was in my opini-
on, one of the chiefest occasions, that made the *Soldan*
comie thither with such diligence as he did. They report
also, that in the night time he had conueyed out of the
same place much thereof: and some say, that he did not
enter therinto, and that he tooke out nothing for feare
of making his souldiers for to thinke that hee would re-
tire, a thing which might bewray the retrait he meane-
for to make; oþers hold opinion, that all the treasure

*A wise fore-
sight in Tam-
erlan after his victorie.*

*The bountie of Tam-
erlan.*

was there, and that he did not thinke euer to be forced in such a citie, & with such forces as he had put into the same, referring such a deed of armes vnto the Divinitie, wherin his men had bin ouercome with such aduantage. Now the Prince after he had certified *Caliba* of this victory, who was all along by the riuier of *Embraces* with his army, which daily increased, having taken many citi-
ties, it was a great astonishment vnto all Persia, & there rained at that present time ouer those Nations a multi-
tude of small kings, some of them obseruing the law of
the Prophet, the other being Christians. The Prince
had a purpose in his retурne to subiect all that wader his
obedience; he sent *Caliba* word of his victory, and that
he gaue him the gouernmēt of all Egypt. So the Prince
hauing taken order for all that was necessarie for the
keeping of such a citie, he caused his armie to passe ouer
the riuier for to go and follow the *Soldan* vnto *Alexan-
dria*, to the end he should not leaue his victorie vnpref-
fect. And hauing caused his auantguard to passe ouer,
and distributed vnto euery one before the passage, a
reward according to their deserts, *Caliba* passed ouer
with the auantguard to go with all speed into *Alexan-
dria*, for to hinder the *Soldan* from ioyning of his forces
together. The Emperour remaining with the maine
forces of the armie, did make no longer abode at *Caire*,
for all the people came and yeclding themselves vnto
him, and after hee had taken the oath of fidelitie of
the people and citie, and of all the neare adioyning ci-
ties, and hauing established as great securitie as hee
could, he determined to stretch euen so farre the bor-
ders of Scithia: he left tenne thousand souldiers with-
in that citie, and brought away those he thought might
hurt him: he chaunged almost all the people therin,
hauing

hauing a great multitude of men within his armie, of
whom he planted euery where as he passed new Colon-
nies for to assure the places, and in a manner euene vnto
Cana all yelded to his obedience: & Embassadors camen
from all partes, as well from *Arabia* the happy, as out of
all Africa, for to submit theselues vnder his obedience,
so much was the terror of his name printed in the harts
of all those people adioyning vnto his conquests. And
referring the disposing of the affaires of Egypt vntil his
retурne from *Alexandria* vnto *Caire*, his owne person
weht vpon the riuier of *Nilm* for his pleasure, hauing
caused all his armie to passe ouer vnder the conduct of
the Prince of *Thanais*: and himselfe with a part of his
souldiers determined to go by water, and causing an
infinite number of boates to be prepared for himselfe,
and those he caried with him, the Prince tooke great
pleasure in beholding this faire riuier, and his swift
course sometimes, and in an instant to become so
calme. The newes being come vnto *Alexandria* of the
marching forward of the army, made the people con-
fule and thinklypon their safetie: insomuch as going
vnto the *Soldan*, they besought him to haue compassion
on their estate, and to withdraw himselfe into *Libia*,
and for themselves they were determined for to doe
as the time serued, and not to resist anie more, so
great a force, against the which they had so often in
vaine opposed themselves: but now they knewe not
what to doe, they must give place vnto fortune, and
that *Tamerlan* his Armie would not passe strong into
Libia: and if weake, he might defende himselfe from
the same, that they would obserue the faith promised
vnto him at his comming thither, and vpon the first
occasion offered, they would make the same appear-

*Tamerlan
went by the
river of Nilus
vnto Alexan-
dria.*

The Soldan's
words when he
fled from A-
lexandria.

vnto him, that he would only preserue his person. The *Soldan* who did see all things desperate, determined for to retire, hoping that time would bring vnto him some change, as also that our army would not remaine there, and that in the meane time he should haue oportunitie to attempt some thing, he went out of the citie of *Alexandria*, the teares in his eies, repeating ofte these words; That God was prouoked against his people, and that he must of necessitie suffer the fatall ouerthrow of so flourishing an estate; that himselfe had done as much as in him lay, according to the charge and choise they had made of him; that he hoped to returme with strong forces for to deliuer them from that bondage wherinto they must needes submit their heads, and beare the yoake. These words were declared vnto *Axalla*, being the most aduanced, who sent them vnto the Prince: he sent him word also, that vnto *Alexandria* came much people to obey his cōmandements, & that for the space of more then fistie leagues, all came for to submit theselues vnto his obedience. So the Prince, hauing receiued these newes, he was verie glad: and seeing his purposes so to prosper, he conceaued hope of a happie retourne. But notwithstanding he was greatly vexed, that he could not get the *Soldan* into his hands: this caused the Prince for to vse crueltie towardes them which tooke his part, and caried them with him, doulting some alteration in his absence. Now as we approched within a dayes iourney vnto *Alexandria*, the Prince sent word vnto *Axalla*, that hee should bring with him the chiefeſt that came, promising vnto him obedience and fidelitie. The Prince hauing made his entrie into *Alexandria* with all his armie, hee di- camped the same neare vnto the Citie, and for the

the safety of his person caused to enter the into 16000 horse, and 20000 footmen, and hauing giuen cōmandement vnto *Axalla*, to pursue the *Soldan* with the auant-guard, the Emperors person remained long time in *Alexandria*, staying vntill he mightheare newes from *Calibes*, vnto whom he had sent *Locheſtan* his great Chamberlaine, for to succeed in his place, a man of good deſert, hauing alwayes commaunded ouer ten thouſand horse in the army, who carying with him his regiment which was of ten thouſand horse, *Calibes* tooke as many for to come forward towards vs with all his cariage. Behold how there needed no mediation with the Prince, he remembred in the abſence of his ſeruants, their va- lor & deſerts, and the honor wherof they were worthy; one of the parts that did ſo much recōmend the Empe- rour. In ſomuch as no man did ſue for any thing, neither demanded any honors, or estates neare vnto his perſon, no not for the gouernmēt of his estate. As we departed frō *Alcaire* the Emperor received newes that the Em- peror his vnlke was very ſick, the which made him very ſad: but he relied vpon the wiſe dome of the Emprefſe his wife, who would ſo well gratifie the kings & princes his ſubiects, that there ſhould happen no trouble when ſoever this ill hap ſhould fall out. For his affaires being proſperous, & many victories daily obtained, who was he in all the world that durſt ſo much as lift vp his head againſt him? much leſſe within his own kingdomes. The Emprefſe alſo ſent him word, that ſhe looked for his coming home, vnto the circumciſion of his eldeſt ſon, who God had giuen vnto him, the which was well nou- riſhed, ſo as in *Alcaire* were the certaine limits of his conqueſts, & alſo of the proſperitie of his fathers inhe- titance. He had newes alſo that the Chinois wold haue

rebelled, and how the Viceroy *Odmar* had punished the
seuereley, and had won a battell wherein the kings bro-
ther was slaine, so as his borders were on that side most
assured, and increased euuen vnto *Caucachina*, after that
they went about for to rebell: notwithstanding, *Odmar*
had a commādeiment from the old Emperor to pacifie
and keepe that which he had conuquered beyond the ri-
uer of *Flezan*. Now *Axalla* hauing passed beyond *Alex-
andria*, had thereby giuen so great a fright vnto all Afri-
ca (they supposing that the Emperor did follow) that 22
kings of *Libia* sent their Embassadors vnto him, for to
offer their obediencie vnto the Emperour. The *Soldan*
hauing passed further forsaken of al his men, who came
daily to yeeld themselues vnto *Axalla* our Lieutenant
generall, *Arsanibei* sent to demaund securitie of the
Emperour, who seeing all things desperate, beseeched
him to accept of his seruice. The Emperour who was
milde, receiued him courteously, graunting vnto him
as much as he desired, and thereupon did sweare fidelit-
tie vnto him: but he had notwithstanding another mat-
ter in his minde, for he had promised the *Soldan* to giue
an attempt vpon the Emperors person: and there were
full soure thousand *Mamelukes* received into the Prince-
ces seruice, who shold haue done this execution with-
in *Alexandria*, where the Prince did cōtinue intending
the establishing of his new conquests. Now the enter-
prise was appointed in the morning when the Prince
shold give audience to euerie one (according to his cu-
stom) hauing of his guard only 1200. souldiers, appoin-
ted euery day out of 10000. ordained for the preserua-
tion of the Princes person: he had also imparted this en-
terprise vnto diuerse of the inhabitants, who shold haue
taken armes as soone as the same shold be executed.

Now

*Arsanibei his
treachery a-
gainst Tamer-
lan.*

Now as the enterprise was dangerous, so seemed it ea-
sie as he thereof perswaded himselfe, hauing caused all
his men to enter one by one into the armie, whither
they had yeelded themselues: and it was three weekes
since he deuised this enterprise. So the day came when
he shold do this execution, the Prince hauing the day
before made him a present of one of the most coragious
horses of his stable, and hauing cōmanded his men to
shew all curtesie and good entertainment vnto him
and his company. Now in the morning he drew neare
vnto the Emperour, who was in his tent, whither euerie
one repaired that had any busynesse with him. Now you
must understand, that *Alexandria* is builded in such a
fashion, that they go vpon the tops of the houises, the
which are in maner of vaultes, where the traitor had se-
cretly placed those who shold assist him after the mis-
chief were cōmitted. He came then & shewed himselfe
a far off; the Prince (full of gentlenesse) asked him what
he desired, astonished notwithstanding that he came into
that place which was not fit for his dignity, the Prince
only ministring iustice for those which had not accesse
vnto his persō, as were the poore people & soldiers: but
he knew not yet that custome: so as the Prince percei-
uing him change colour in holding some petition, the
Prince had alwaies an eye to that he did; on a suddaine
hee drew neare vnto the Prince, with his sword in his
hand: the Prince hauing his ready assoone as he, missed
not him as he had done, the Prince retired back one pase
for to auoide the thrust he cast at him: the Emperour ha-
uing striken him, did almost cut off one of his armes,
the which he put forward for to strike him. In this in-
stant they ran vnto the Princes succour, and one of his
seruants comming, did giue him another blow vpon

L 4

*Tamerlan his
great daunger
and valiano
defence of him
selfe, to the
mischief of
the traitor.*

the head: but a small matter wherewith he fell downe. The Prince hauing stayed them from killing of him, to the end he might know his companions, then cried he out, & with great lamentations bewailed his good master, sending vnto him this his deed, as the last witnessse of his fidelitie. The Prince demanded of him, wherefore he did not kill him in the battell, but would traiterously at this present vnder the pretence of friendship and seruice take his life from him? The other answered onely, let me die, let me die. The chiefe Judge of the Imperiall Iustice tooke and examined him, together with the Princes ihost priuie Councell. In the meane time they caused euery man to take armes, the Princes horsemen riumented on horsebacke, the gards were increased, they made the hauen sure, the Prince withdrew himself into his lodging, being happie that he had sauied his life fro this blow. You might haue seene both Captains & souldiers run vnto the Emperors lodging, & wold haue forced the guards for to see whether the Prince were well, who was desirous to take rest: he was cōpelled to shew himselfe vnto his Captains & souldiers, for to assure the of his health: yea he was constrained to mount on horsbacke, and to go euery where euen into the campe. And at such time as they did see the Prince, you would haue said, that the heauēs did breake with cries, through the ioy they made ouer all for the health of their Prince, so great Idolaters were the souldiers of their Emperour. The other was presently put to the torture, who couragiouly confessed all the enterprise requiring death. Some wēt vnto the place where the named were; there were three hundred yet shitt vp, who were all tyed and put in prison, the others sought out here and there. He misseed not to accuse those of the citie, vnto whom he had

had deliuered letters of credit from the Soldan. The Prince who was an enemie vnto cruetie, perceiving that the end of this businesse would prooue long, hee went out of *Alexandria*, for that he knew the discouerie of all the partakers, & to the end execution might be made of those of the enterprise. It was a miserable spectacle to behold all these thinges thus perfourmed within the Citie, at such time as they apprehended the conspirators, who being conuinced, were put to death openly: and the game began at *Arzambei*, who being strangled, his head was set vp for a memorie of that treason vpon the market place, and his body deuided into foure quarters. And the verie same punishment was taken of all the conspired inhabitants of the citie, or any others. Those which were suspected, and might anie wayes be detected, were led away prisoners, and made slaues, being changed from that place. Beholde the end of this conspiracie, the which the valor and maiestie of the Prince alone did defend, and no other force at all: but as I haue often heard the Prince say, he had an iimagination, that this mad fellow wold do him some mischiefe, and if it had not bene for feare of committing any thing vnworthy his greatnessse and faith giuen, he would haue caused him to be apprehended, but he had good regard vnto his practises. The Prince was often wont to say, that he did not feare such wicked murtherers, for that he had a good keeper neere vnto him: and this hee meant (as I vnderstood afterwards) by a defending Angell, whom he called *Meaniel*, vnto whom it was enioyned (as he said) by God, for to defend him against all dangers, whose picture he caried as a mark in his ensignes & imprese, causing the croissant mark of the Ottomans to be blotted out of all

Arzambei be-
headed for
treason against
Tamerlan,
with diuers of
his companions
at *Alexandria*

A resolute say-
ing of Tamerla

Asia, and his owne to be planted there. Now *Axalla* hauing passed further, and made the Princes armes to be felt ouer all, hauing also brought all the neather *Libia* to be subiect vnto *Alexandria*: the Prince finding this countrie to be verie faire and pleasant, he looked daily for the comming of *Calibes*, and he in the meane time ordered the affaires of his new estate, causing his Armie to refresh it selfe, the which was spread ouer all: he suffered none but *Axalla* to keepe the order of an armie before him. The heate was very great at that present, the which our souldiers did endure with great discommoditie: the Parthians especially whose temperate climate doth incline more vnto cold then heate. This being ended, the Emperour returned into *Alexandria*, whither diuers Embassadors from the kings of *Libia* and *Barbary* came vnto him, swearing obedience of fidelitie between his hands. The nearest gaue hostages for the other further off: the Prince contented himselfe with their faith, and with the outward signes of their goodwilles. Behold how euery one came to acknowledge this new Lord, & he would haue the great enlargemēt of the bounds of his Empire appeare vnto the world. Now the Prince had a desire more then he vsed to haue, to see the sweetnes of his natvie country, age bringing vnto him a desire to rest himselfe. And he was wont to say, that he had heard the Emperor his father declare, that the fauor of fortune was at his period vnto a man of 45 years of age, for any increasing; that it behoued after that time to study how to preferue it, & not any more to augment the same: because fortune doth often change her countenance, like vnto that of man, the which doth become wrinckled & old. He had moreouer, to performe the building of *Samarcād*, where he

Obedience
sworne vnto
Tamerlan by
almost all the
kings of Afric.

A strange opin-
ion in Tamerlan of For-
tunes fauor.

he meant to eternize his niemorie, the which he greatly desired: so as he was curious to search in all parts artificers & skilfull men for to send thither, & all the faire people he could find in any place where he was the conqueror. In this very place he said that he would make his tombe, where he had receiued breath, weighing it in a iust & equall ballance, to deliuer vnto the earth the same which it had brought forth, without vsing any ingratitude vnto the same. And he being one day demanded by a Pagan (vnto whō he made this discourse, and who beheld his stately tombe) where hee would build one for his soule? The Prince shewed vnto him heauen, saying, that it should returne to heauen, from whence it did come: for this same (said he) is a parcel of the high God. And seeing we are come vnto this matter, I will speake a word therof by the way: which was, that being one day reprehēded by one of his great Priests, because he did not constraine with the sword, all religions to imbrace his. Ah my friend (said hee) I will neuer do it: for I cannot beleue but God is delighted with the diuersity of religions, hating onely those which are without any religion; and my selfe would willingly haue rooted out from the face of the earth such kind of people, but not the other. I beleue the fashiō I vse in praying vnto God, is the most acceptable vnto him, & therefore I serue him in this maner. This is the cause wherfore I suffer within my dominiōs euery one to worship God in any maner whatsoeuer, so as his principall end be to honor, and not to despise him. I haue said this by the way: seeing I write this history for you, it is verie conuenient I declare vnto you what his religiō was. This was his maner also, that whensoeuer he did speake of God, it was with so great reuerēce, that he durst not al-

*The Author
saith, that this
may be praised
in a Pagan &
infidel, not in a
Christian
Prince.*

most lift vp his eyes aloft, so fearfull was he of the soueraigne maestie: & of all men I did neuer see any more fearfull of the diuinitie. He was also wont to say, that euerie one should continue in that wherin he was borne and first instructed, if it were of that religion as serued one only God. Our Prince had so good condicions & so agreeable vnto euerie one, that it shall bee hard for me to vtter and declare them vnto posteritie, neither can I sufficiently commend them, nor liuelie represent them in that perfection I desire, as I haue vndertaken for to do. Now for to returne againe vnto our historie, the Emperor receiued newes of *Calibes* marching forward, and of receiuing his great Chamberlain into his Armie. We looked for his comming with great deuotion, being daily desirous to return, after we had run so many forrtunes of all kinds, and the Prince hauing subdued and brought vnder his obediece so many sundrie people. *Axalla* was commanded to march towards vs, and the whole Army was summoned from all parts for to assemble themselues together. The Prince carried away from *Alexandria* euen to the number of seuen or eight thousand men, and put thereinto for to inhabite other people, whom he had brought from sundry places: he left therein sixe thousand horsmen, and tenne thousand footmen: he appointed a sufficient Gouerner vnder *Calibes*, who arriued there presently. The Emperour after he had declared vnto him his pleasure, and appointed what he should doe, the Armie was commanded to set forward directlie towards *Caire*: the Prince hauing left within *Alexandria* *Zamolzan*, a man of great reputation, to bee Lieutenant generall vnder *Calibes*. The number of forces left by the Prince vnto the said Gouerner, was fortie thousand horse, and fifty thou-

thousand footmen, whereof part were dispersed into all the strong places and forts, and principally all along the sea side: the rest were left in the plaine, feldes towards *Alexandria*, where *Zamolzan* commadeth them. Staying vntill such time as the Prince were departed from *Caire*, whether he did go for to conduct *Calibes*, whom (as I haue said) the Emperour had appointed for to command ouer all *Syria* and *Egypt*, together with the countries newly conquered in *Libia* and *Barbary*. Then the Emperour after he had taken order for all things beloing vnto the prosteruation of his new conquest, perceiving that euerie one of those countries did like well of his government, acknowledging his great mildnesse and great Justice obserued euerie where, it seemed that euerie one did like well of this change, & to be gouerned by so victorious a Prince, and whose power was so great for to defend them. So after he had received the solemn oath of the people, as well of *Alexandria*, of *Caire* and other Cities, of all *Syria* and the bordering countys: we began to set forward our Auaantguard, and the Battaille with the Prince of *Tamerlano*. So the Emperour dismissed *Calibes*, wher he had instructed him, after what fashion he would haue those Kingdoms gouerned, over the which he had giuen him charge, and himself hauing friendly committed them vnto God, not as a maister, but like a companion, he seemed to be sorrie for to leaue them destitute of his presence. The Prince himselfe with few returned vnto *Jerusalem*, where he remained eleven dayes, for to visite daily the Sepulcher of Jesus Christ the God of the Christians: and was curious to bring away great quantite of the catch from that place, saying that he would honor ther with the places of devotion within his new

Calibes made Governor of Syria with the rest conquered in Africa.

Tamerlano his devotion to Jerusalem.

Citie. He was also desirous, for to see the ruines of *Salomon* his Temple, saying, that he woulde alse gone to be builded like vnto that at *Samarannah*: In like sorte did he wonder at *Jerusalem* the seate of *David* kingdome, and of that great *Salomon*: hee lamented the ruines thereof, for that he did not see them fullie in their former beautie, so greatly did the deuotion vnto all holinesse conuict him. He onlie despised the *Iewes*, which had committed so cruell a murther against him, who came to saue them. The Emperour having this affectiōn vnto *Jerusalem*, did declare the same to be fice from all subsidies, and garrisons of men of warre. He gaue great giftes vnto the Monasteries, and honoured them as long as he remained in that place. I will returne to declare how the great Chamberlaine, as soone as hee was come into his Armie, had besieged a City called *Meleg* vpon the riuer of *Euphrates*, staying for the Emperour, the whiche being brought vnto great necessity, and even after he had greatlie battered the same, was constrained for to raise the siege from before it, being succoured by all the Lords of *Quinay*, *of Gally*, and others assembled, beldeuing the Emperour vsē overthrowne, by one onlie report they had received from certaine false messengers; in so much as that which was peaceable before, presently was in armes, and he had vpon his arme all the forces thereabout. Hee in the meane time remained within this Campe, having no commandement frō the Prince to gluce any battaile, and being retired himself all along the riuer of *Euphrates*, the enemies paſſing ouer the riuer, began to preſſe vpon him for to fight: he which had no ſuch commiſſion, kept himself as wel as he could within his trenches, having already aduertisid the Emperour of all

Tamerlan,
granted great
priviledges vnto
Jerusalem.

The great
Chamberlaine
his diſcreet ca-
riage of him-
ſelfe in Aſſiria
and Perſia.

that had paſſed, and not thinking of the enemies rafhnesſe, could not iſtāg them to come & assault him within his trenches; but being growne vainglorious by repulſing of him from before the Citie, they did attribute vnto themſelues therefore a great glorie, and vnto vs a great disgrace: ſo as they deſired, when their ſoldiers had this aduantage, to win a greater, for the, if they could. So they determined to force our Campe, ouer the which commanded a Captaine, who was (as they ſuppoſed) more trained vp within the Court then in Armies. (And certaintly the ſcare and reputation of *Cathas* was great, the whiche made him feared: for when they reckened vp the names of our chiefe Captaingues, next after *Axalla* they put the name of *Cathas*, for his valor, and experience.) So farre foorth that deſpifing this new head, they biffid their heads in thincking the vitorie to be on their ſides molt certaine, for lacke of experience in him which commanded it, by reaſon of his youth. So in a morning they came and lodged their Campe neare vnto ours: the great Chamberlaine having ſo commandid his ſoldiers not to iſſue out of the Campe, but for to defend theſelues with the aduantage they had by reaſon of their trenches, & let his army in order diſplaying thereof for the better defence of the ſame; & having of that as of other matters raken the aduice of his Captaingues, he layed for his enemies with this reſoluſion, alluring of him ſelf by that means they wold not diſobey the Prince comandement. The onlie miſſis failed not with all ſorts of armes, forceably to come and assault our Campe: they were in number 5000, and a footme, who in proſecuacion of the aliaſ. Now to the campe was made in that aliaſ, that a certaine place to iſſue out was left in the ſame, by the whiche the horſmen might go vnto the battaile, and fight vnder the

The politike
& valiant ser-
vices performed
by the great
Chamberlaine.

safegard of the trenches, of which cunning the enemies did nothing at all doubt. For they had sent their horsemen vnto the other side of a little riuer, by the which they doubted that our men, not hauing the courage to sustaine the fight, and seeing them selues assallted, would fly away, to the end they might serpon them in their retreat. Now our men were no more but eighteen thousand horse, and fortie thousand footmen: there was indeed therein a great multitude of carriages and prisoners, whom the great Chamberlaine had caused to worke so well in the intrenching, that they were stronger then the Citie they had besieged; and from whence they had raised their siege. So the fight endured two or three houres, when as he perceiving that our men did couragiouſlie reptile them, and that an infinite number of the enemies were slaine, the Chamberlaine thought it a fit time to assall them: so he iſſued out of the Camp by the ſame place that I haue declared, with tenne thousand of the best horse within his Armie, and hauing first giuen order to buſie them, he came and ſerpon them on a ſuddaine; and ſlue a great number of them, in ſo muche as our men became weary with killing, their horſmen being aduertified of his euill hap befallen vnto their footmen, thought good to repaſſe againe their Ruler: the which the great Chamberlaine perceiving, ſounded the retaile, not willing to haue any thing to no good purpoſe: for their horſmen were in number thirtie thouſand. This day did they loſe thirtie and twentie thouſand men, that were ſlaine as well in the field, as in the fight of the trenches. The chiefe of the faction was Hanez, who was called Hanez, a King of Armenia. In this meane time the Prince who had receiued newes of his

Armies

Armies disgrace, had diſpatched Axalla with ſpeed, for to aduance himſelf forward with the Parthian horſmen, for the affiſtace of the great Chamberlaine. And Axalla hauiing receiued newes of the victorie within two or three dayes iourney, he ſent word of the ſame vnto the Emperor, during which time hee remained at Damasco, ſtaying for the Princes commandement: who after he had receiued theſe newes did publiſh the ſame ouer all, and eſpecially aduertised Calibes thereof, to the end the ſame ſhould ſtay their troublousome ſpirits, who already did beleeue that the Armie of the great Chamberlaine was ouerthrowne. I will declare by the way, that I marked in the Prince a greater ioy for this victorie, then I did note in him for any other he had where his owne person commanded. And this he did in my opinion, for that he reioyced that he was not deceived in the choiſe which hee had made of the great Chamberlaine, who was as yet too young for ſuch a charge. For he thought this ſame would yelde matter vnto ſome for to blame him, not to haue ſufficiently weighed ſuch a charge: but ſeeing the wiſdom he had ſhewed in keeping his aduantage, and like- wife the obediēce and reſpeſt he had vnto the Princes commandement, this ſame did greatly content him. Some also report, that the Prince would not buſie himſelf any longer, deſiring to returne vnto his ancestors kingdomeſ, ſer to affiſe them, fearing leaſt the long time of his abſence ſhould cauſe ſome ſeditions, by reaſon of ſome diſgrace his Armie might receiue at the length: and therfore he would returne and paſſe ouer the Mountaines of Imau before the rigor of winter came, the which drew neare. Prince Axalla was comandeado to abide and attend the Emperours

M

Anable con-
ference be-
tween Tamer-
lan and his
great Châceller

comming who marched forward, putting garrisons in the strong forts of *Indea* and *Siria*, and dispeopling all those places he thought were likely to revolt in his absence. The which was not done without dismanteling of all those townes he meant not for to keepe; commanding the like to bee done throughout all *Egipt*. I haue forgotten to declare howe the Prince dismissed the aide sent vnto him from the Emperour of *Greece*, hauing first giuen great presents vnto the Captaines and also vnto the Lieutenant of the late Prince *Casta Cusni*, so that the meanest souldier rested well contented, assuring you that our Prince was much renowned, for knowyng how to bound his ambition, who knew howe to stretch the same ouer all the world: for hauing with good successe ioyned thereunto the Empire of the Soldan, it had bene easie for him to haue made *Constantinople* the principall seate of his conquests, and by these meanes to ioyn all his countries together, whereof the Sea might haue bene his limits: the which being declared vnto him by one of his counsellers that kept the seale, whom they call Chanceller, & whom the Prince did credit in many of his affaires, that such large boundes it was easie for him to haue at his returne, saying vnto him; that it behoued great men to vse their faith and friendship vnto their most aduantage; and that hee was a publike person, vnder whose government so many people and severall nations did wholly repose themselues; and that he should not neglect so great a benefite, which would bring so much glorie and greatnessse vnto the Parthian nation. He answered, that he liked better to leaue their limits founded vpon his vertue, then increased to his dishonour by infidelitie. Whensoeuer the Greecke Emperour

shall

shall giue me any other occasion, then as a friend and good neighbour, then shall he feele my power, & God will assist my good cause. I thinke (my friend) that I neuer did any thing more of the honour and glorie of my Empire, and vnto the Parthian nation, then for to leaue a memoriall vnto posteritie, that a Parthian Emperour did come so long a iourney, for to minister iustice vpon such a tyrant dogge as *Baiazer*: and for to set at libertie this worthie nobilitie, whom he would bring into bondage. And hauing power to performe it, I haue not done the same, but haue in such sort bounded my ambition, as to abstaine from commanding ouer the fairest and richest Empire, and for to gouerne the most beautifull Citie in the world. I will reason with you (my friend) and say, that I haue not obtained anie such victorie as that is, although I be the Conqueror of so manie severall people and nations so farre off, and that my Armies, euen vnto this present, through the almighty fauour of the great God my God, haue alwayes bene victorious. It is an ordinarie matter to winne battailes, to conquer kingdomes, and for to prescribe lawes vnto Empires, manie haue done the same: but there be fewe to be found amongst the great Princes and Potentates, who haue ballanced iustice and equitie with their ambition: but putting themselues by right or wrong into the middest of the worlde, haue held onely force for iustice, the which some haue vsed, not hauing regard either vnto equitie or faith. I will at the least wifc leaue this example vnto posteritie. Do you not see how this faith which I keepe with mine enemies, maketh them become my faithfull friends? What force and vertue (think you) wil it haue with them which be my friends already? And

how greatly shall my honour and reputation bee increased? Command me then I pray you, and leue to blame me. The Chanceller being returned from him, who was verie wise, declared this discourse vnto mee, the which I would not omit, to make the good nature of my Prince the better knowne, whose historie I do set foorth. As also that his conditions should bee the better represented before the eyes of those which haue not diligently considered the same: or rather for such as heare speach of the blessing that God hath bestowedvpon him in so manie happie conquestes, to the end his goodnesse should bee acknowledged, and not attributed vnto fortune or blinde chaunce, the which raiseth vp the vicious as soone as the vertuous. So the Prince came vnto *Damasco*, where hee found *Axalla*, who stayed his comming with the Auaunt-guard, who had made an end of vtterly destroying it, for that hee knew the same to be euill affected. His Armie encamped eight daies therein, Prince *Axalla* hauing receiued commandement to setid sixe thousand horse vnto the great Chamberlaine, to the end that hee might passe ouer the riuier of *Euphrates* with safetie: and he went to besiege *Mebeg* againe, the which within three dayes he tooke, and *Rasfan* also, and all the countrie yeelded vnto the Emperours obedience, and especially the Cities situated vpon the riuier of *Euphrates*. The Prince gaue vno him a commandement, to stay at the passage for to ioyne with him, and himselfe in person to come vno him: all the which hee performed accordingly. The Prince did giue him very good entertainment, greatly commanding his valour and courage before all the Captaines of the Army, and afterwardes sent him backe vnto his charge, hauing com-

*Damasco de-
stroyed by Ta-
merlan.*

commandement to ioine a part of his forces with those of *Axalla*, and himselfe was appointed vnto the Arier-guard, ouer the which *Calibes* had bene leader: although indeed our Armie marched all in a front: for the Prince marched in the middest, *Axalla* on the right hand, and the great Chamberlaine vpon the left: the Prince of *Thanau* was in the Battaille neare vnto the Prince. I do not here set downe by name so manie Princes and other great Captaines, the which commanded ouer troupes as well of horse as footmen. So the Emperor came vnto *Mebeg*, where he passed ouer the riuier of *Euphrates*, from the which place he sent other ten thousand horse vnto *Calibes*, vnder the cōduct of the Prince of *Atacen*, together with fifteene or sixteene thousand footmen for aide, he being commanded to take his way by *Babylon*, and to make the same subiect vnto the Prince; and he remained in the same place to vnderstand what successe *Atacen* had, he being also commanded to remaine in that same place to heare newes from *Calibes*, and to aduertise him what need he had of him, the Emperour hauing bene certified of some stirring of the Soldan. Notwithstanding *Calibes* sent word, that they came from all parts to submit themselves vnder the Princes obediēce. In the end, after some abode, he caused the front of his army to march directly into *Armenia*, being desirous to passe by *Diabroth*, and punish these little kings, who had rebelled against this men, being also desirous to bring vnder the subiectiōn of the Parthian Empire those countries which lie euē at the mouth of *Euphrates*, which the Prince of *Atacen* did happily bring to passe: & Embassadors came from all the kings which commanded to take the oth of fidelity for the same: for you must v-

*Tamerlan.
with his Army
marched into
Persia.*

derstand, that since the Empire of the Christians, which they call Romans, they were sometimes governed by the Ottomans, sometimes by the Soldans, sometimes by the Califes, & sometimes by the Lieutenants general of the Romans; so as these people were now at the strongest, but greatly destroyed by means of these warres. Now the Prince would assure himselfe of the passage ouer the riuier of *Euphrates*, for to succour frō thence the prouinces of *Egypt*, at such time as they should haue neede thereof: and being ready to drawe straight into *Armenia*, he receiued newes from *Calbes*, beseeching his Maiesy to dispatch aide vnto him. Presently was the Prince of *Atacen* sent backe againe, and commanded to set forward into *Egypt*, and the Prince in person went vnto *Babylon*, leauing *Axalla* with the Auaunt-guard, not to leaue the iourny into *Armenia*. The Prince being aduised to go thither himselfe in person, to the end for to bring vnto them a great astonishment and assurance in his bountie, when they would trust to the same. We came in eleuen daies vnto *Babylon*: the Prince hauing receiued all those people vnder his obedience, he left the great Chamberlaine at *Romedat* for to fortifie it, and also for to command all the riuier of *Euphrates*, euen to the Armenians. He recomended vnto him the inhabitants of *Babylon*, who had shewed themselues verie affectioned towardes him, and the which was almost wholly peopled by the Tartarians: for the late Prince of *Sachetay* his father hauing made an enterprise thither, did take the same, and for the better keeping thereof, he caused the Parthian Colonies to come thither; who in the end were so vexed by their neighbors, as well Mamelues as Persias, that they were of necessitie compelled to submit themselues vnder their

*Aid sent vnto
Calbes into
Egypt.*

their Empire, the affection and remembrance of their ancient originall remaining alwayes with them. The Emperour for this consideration shewed them all mildnesse, and vpon this occasion desired to make himselfe Lord of this countrie, by this right, that the late Prince his father had once conquered it by a Lieutenant generall of his, called *Sahali*, whose remembrance was yet verie fresh, for the seruices he had done vnto the Empire of *Sachetay*. From this place the Prince returned in great hast, being aduertised by Prince *Axalla*, how the Persian *Guines* came to visite him in peaceable maner, for to submit vnder his obedience whatsoeuer countries he held, the which were not many. The Emperour who did wonder at his holinesse, and honoured him, hauing vnderstode thus much, made haste to set forward for to honour him the more: for he held an opinion alwayes of him as of an holy personage, in so much as the Emperour was determined for to see him, for the estimation of his holinesse and religion. Now vnderstanding that he came in this maner towards him, he left his troupes to come softly vnder the charge of the Prince of *Thanais*, and himselfe aduanced forward vnto *Axalla*, who looked for the Persian *Guines*: who presently dispatched towards him the Prince of *Liseauceu* and the great Chancellor for to gratifie him, and to assure him of the great desire the Emperour had of his comming. The Prince wondering greatly at his holie life, determined to yeeld him all the honour hee could possiblie, and to deuise all meanes to pleasure him. So the Emperour set forward to meeete with this *Guines*, who did come in verie humble manner, bringing also with him an infinite number of sundrie kinds of beasts, the which he

*Guines the he-
ly Persian.*

*The strange
comming of
Guines vnto
Tamerlan.*

kept tame, and by the which he taught men. As soon as he did see the Emperour, he began to make his praiers towards the heauens, for the greatnessse of the health of the Emperour, for the greatnessse of the religion of the Prophet, excommunicating with all his power the Ottomans, as enemies vnto the faithfull beleeuers. The Emperor who came in great pompe, was greatly astonished, to see this man in such furniture as he was, and as he was by nature, a great wonderer at such kind of people, there was he more then euer before: and being willing to gratifie him, he offered him part of the enemies spoyles hee had conquered, giuing vnto him fifteene or sixteene thousand prisoners, to the end they might be instructed in his religion, a present the which was verie acceptable vnto *Guines*, in as much as this same did greatly help to augment & also increase him, causing the most part of them to conforme themselves according to his manners and opinion. But as this deuout humour pleased the Emperour, so diuers on the other side did reprooue the strange fashions in this Prince, who through holinesse knew well how to bring so many countries vnder his obedience. Now diuers blamed the Emperor for making so great account of his holines: but whē I cōsider the honor & reuerēce which man oweth vnto religion, I am not of those, which will say, that a prince ought not to haue so much therof: for certainly it is a thing wherof any do seldome complaine. Now after all this great shewe of religion, he came not vnto the Emperour for nothing, but rather for two ends, whereof the one was, the feare he had of this army, which he desired to be fauorable vnto him: & the other, to receiue by meanes thereof, increase of his affaires, vnder shewe of devotion, knowing the Emperor

*Guines religiō
abused for the
increase of his
greatnesse.*

to

to be enclined as much as might be to godlinesse, and also that he might be alwaies neare vnto the Emperors person, as protector of all the countries neare vnto him, the which by his meanes and intercession did submit themselues vnder the Princes greatnessse; and himselfe was the first that thereunto did willingly submit all the iurisdiction he had, although the Emperour made no request for the same. But this humility did serue him to good purpose, and to his successors also: for this was his preseruation, & the foundation of their greatnessse: so as the Prince, hauing subdued all Persia excepting the citie of *Tauris*, ^{Tauris.} the which is a very great and rich citie, and hauing made vnto it selfe a peculiar kind of governement, did hinder as much as in it lay, the greatnessse of *Guines*, and a great part of the country also that was obedient vnto him, and in the same was a Captaine who did comand them, called *Talismahar*, who ^{Talismahar.} was throughly aduertised of the credite *Guines* had with the Emperor, and who would not faile to solicite him for to enterprise and conquer this citie, and thereof change also the government: and he hauing an opinion that the Emperour being desirous to returne, would not busie himselfe about him, if he set but a countenance of well defending of himself, and so hauing taken such order, he sent his Embassadors vnto the Emperour for to informe him of the usurpations *Guines* had made, and his purposes vnder the pretence of a fained religiō. The Emperour would heare nothing of all that he sent him word. But he himselfe would declare his owne reasons, and would demand the auncient right his predecessors had vnto this countrie: or for want thereof, hee would make appeare how hurtfull the same would be vnto the. The Emperour omitted not to here them, and noted

verie well the meanes he might haue to make himselfe greater through these diuisions: acknowledging and considering well therof, he found that euery where they did abuse the same, and especially that the cloake of religion is bigge and large enough for to couer all the world: but he dissembled it, and setting forward caried *Guines* with him, and receiued a new oath of all the people, and in the strong cities he planted new Colonies: to conclude, the Emperours determination was to bring all Persia vnder his subiection. Nowe Prince *Guines* hauing alreadie submited himselfe vnder his obedience, had giuen an example vnto manie: but the Emperour who considered that *Tauris* was a great citie, and the chiefest of that countrie, he sought to haue practises vnder hand, hauing sent some of his men vnto this end, promising vnto this Captaine a gouernement within his owne countrie: but hee who was hated of *Guines*, could not assure himselfe, so as he perswaded the people to resolute vpon the extremitie of a siege, the which did greatly displease the Emperour, vnto whom it being declared, that the presence of *Guines* was very prejudiciale vnto him, for the bringing of this citie vnder his obedience, hee aduertised him thereof, and hauing presented him with all sortes of giftes and honours, hee returned from thence into his owne countrie, hauing remained with the Emperour some fifteene dayes: the borders of his dominion stretched from *Saucasan* on our side, and on the other side, euен vnto the Caspian sea. Now *Axalla* was commanded to aduance forward with the auantgard: and as soone as he entred into the territory of *Tauris*, to put vnto fire and sword all them which should resist him. Behold how the Emperour could serue himselfe

with

Axalla marched with his armie into the country of *Tauris*.

with this occasion, for to put vnder his subiection all *Glaustere* & *Taperestan*, the which vntill this present had maintained themselues against the often roades of the Tartariaus. Now as soone as *Talismahar* understood our armie approached vnto his territorie, he entred into opinion to aduance forward with all his horsemen, and some footmen for to furnish the strōg places, the which might busie the Emperors armie. He had with him full thirtie thousand good horse, hee being also a most famous Captaine, being able greatly to distresse our armie, the which was wearie with wants, and through the long time it had marched and encamped, euен vnto the beginning of winter. But the inhabitants of *Tauris* being very light & inconstant, he thought that the euents of warre are doubtfull, and oftentimes vncertaine, and that if there should happen any disgrace vnto his armie, he doubted least some change & alteration should happen within the citie, where hee hoped to find his chiefest safetie. He therefore sent his horsemen vnder the charge of one of his Lieutenants called *Camaras*, who was of very great experience, he being enioined to weare our armie, and if he found oportunitie to fight with it, assuring himselfe that there would be sufficient to assault the same: but aboue all, that he shold fight by surprise, and not in open battell, knowing wel, that so great a multitude of men did take vp a great countrie, and lay strōgly being ioyned together. The Emperor being aduertised of this resolution, sent word therof vnto *Axalla*, to the end he shold not be assaulted on a sudden, & hauing summoned a city the which they called *Cafechion*, *Camaras* had put men thereinto when he did see our armie go that way, so as the same made a refusall. Now *Axalla* hauing inuested it, he began to assault the same,

Camaras.

hauing with the great number of pioners he had, raised vp a Caualier, the which did defend our men approching vnto the wall, and from whence likewise they did continually fight with them that were within, who did resolutely defend themselues. *Axalla* hauing assaulted them on euery side, in the end they were ouercome, their courages failing them, and also because they were almost all wounded, our souldiers entred thereinto, and so they were all cut in peeces. About the time that our men spoiled, and put all vnto fire and sword, the Emperour being as yet three leagues from the siege, *Camares* shewed himselfe with his horsemen, and beganne the fight vpō two thousand horse, the which some had caused to aduance forward on a sudden, doubting of the enemie, and they came euен where the maie battaile of *Axalla* was, driving that troupe forward in fight, but wisely and like a Captaine, aduancing no more then foure thousand horse to performe this exploit, and him selfe comming after in very good order, & hauing caused the retreat for to sound, Prince *Axalla* commaunded sixe thousand Parthian horse for to follow them, and if they could mingle theselues amongst them, the which being very well and diligently performed by the Captaine which did conduct the, the auant-currers of these foure thousand horse, hauing perceiued *Axalla* es maine forces to aduance forward, following the lightnesse of these Parthians, began presently to turne themselues, and retire in very good order, leauing the foure thousand horse to make head against the sixe thousand Parthians, notwithstanding in retyng themselues in the end, at the passage of a riuier, *Camares* did stay, & put all his troupes in battell array, assyting of his men, who were somewhat pressed by the enemie, although the

fight

fight was in a manner equall, and there were some sixe or seuen hundred men slaine of either side, *Camares* making a shew of lodging, was carefull for to send to defend all the passages. *Axalla* hauing aduanced forward the footemen with him, forced the passage, and found the enemie retired ten leagues beyond the same, who wisely had put into a citie neare adioyning, a sufficient garrison for to defend it, and hold out for the space of eight dayes: and *Camares* in the meane time did weacie our armie, and made great spoyle of all kind of vintuals, hoping to draw things into length. But the example of those the which had beene handled so roughly, caused them not to bee so obstinate: for it is a *Maxime* to shorten the war, that by punishing wel the obstinate by their liues, the neighbours become wise through their example, not to play the fooles in the same manner: so did it fall out with *Gorgochin*, the which in steed of being obstinate, came to parley, and was receiued by composition, and well vsted. *Axalla* being aduertised that *Camares* was at Archich 3tenne leagues beyond that place, he made choise of tenne thousand Parthians, and of sixe thousand Scithians, and of tenne thousand choise Stradiots, determining for to surprise the enemie, and caused a rumor to be spread by some sent betweettie, that they of *Gorgochin* looked for his succour, and had not yeelded themselues; & that they did greatly batter the same, the which *Axalla* hoping to accomplish, aduanced directly towards them, hauing commanded the rest of the armie to approach as neare as they could. By this meanes he surprised them in a morning, being encamped within a great village, & hauing found a thousand of their horsemen at their ease, he caused them to be pursued euen into the campe, and putting

Strategeme.

himselfe into battell array, to the end they should not come foorth without fighting, hee encamped himselfe vpon the wayes into their campe, hoping verie soone either to famish them, or for to compell them to come vnto a battell. Now there was but one way to issue out in order: the Prince *Axalla* hauing caused the footemen hee had with him to aduance forward, he placed the same vpon the wayes vnto their campe. Now they had left their footemen behinde them, and had none but their horsemen, the which Prince *Axalla* perceiuing, he caused trenches to bee made for to hinder them, and hauing sent word vnto the Emperour of this deede, hee set forward with all diligence. Now *Camaras* thought he had all the whole armie vpon him; therefore he beganne to thinke vpon his safetie, seeing himselfe compelled for to fight, hauing but one issuing place, the which was vpon the side of the enemies campe. Nowe hee had caused a counter-trench to be made, the which was along by a little mountaine, wherewith he hoped to strengthen himselfe so well, as to set himselfe in battell array, and to force foure thousand horse which were his guard. I haue forgotten to declare, that the Emperour as soone as he had receiued these newes, caused the Prince of *Thanais* to march on forward, with twentie thousand horse that were alreadie arriuied, the which caused our enemies to beleue that our whole armie was encamped. Now the enemy was determined to make his retrait, & for to cut in peeces this standing watch of foure thousand horse, & this matter fell out about midnight, when as the Moone did shine bright. Prince *Axalla* by chance came to visite his watches, and had some 2000. horse which followed him, & he being aduertised that

the

the enemie caused fires to be kindled within the counter-trenches, the which we sought to force and win, he doubted of that the enemie did in-deed: so as he secretly comanded all the army to mount on horsebacke, notwithstanding this could not be so soone performed, that the enemie had not first attempted forceably to execute his enterprise, and beganne to put two thousand horse before him, for to trie the hazard of fortune, who raine cleane through the guards which were on foot. Now our men had alreadie begunne a counter-trench for to be opposite against that same which they had made. This did hinder them, and our souldiers hearing the noise, beganne to take armes, and to resist the enemis, who did strongly assault our men, and vpon their first comming being followed by certain footmen, they did winne our counter-trench, and beganne to labour for to leuell the same, for to passe ouer their horsmen, where happened a very great disorder: for our footmen being astonisched, their horsemen having passed, the most part of them were cut in peeces, wherin the enemis busying themselves longer then they should haue done, our men were soone vpon them (the which were the fixe thousand horse that were in gard halfe a league from thence) who arriving found the enemis in this disorder, and charged vpon them: but *Camaras* was alreadie passed ouer the first trench. About the same time Prince *Axalla* (who was on horsebacke) beeing aduertised of this disorder, came vnto the allarium with two or three thousand horse, the which were presently in a readinesse, and finding the danger of his men, did hazard himselfe into the fight: but the enemie made no head at all, but did continually retyre, *Axalla* alwayes ioyning together those of

The valiant
nesse of *Ax-
alla*.

the campe, who came vnto the allarum: but the enemy coining vnto a paßage, the which place *Axalla* had commaunded sixe thousand men for to keepe, the enemie not thinking to find any hinderance there, was beaten backe: he busied himselfe in seeking for to force the paßage. In the end he went lower for to passe ouer, resolued for to fight if they did vrge him to it. Now *Axalla* following him very neare, the enemie turned his head, and like vnto a furious beast, hee came vnto the charge very couragiously as one desperate, and retурning in good order, he foud *Axalla*, who was in the forefront of scuen thousand horse that followed him: the other had yet also twelue or thirteene thousand horse with him. It behoued *Axalla* to shew his couraige and valour at this present: for seeing himselfe engaged, he did runne thorough the thirteene thousand horse, and hauing his horse flaine vnderneath him with the blow of a launce, vpon the second charge he was mounted againe and succoured, at such time as behold eight or tenne thousand horse, led by *Damascen* (whom *Axalla* had commanded to affist and follow him, who did beare the brunt of all) arriving, they found our men almost all ouerthrown notwithstanding maintaining the fight resolutely. Then was the enemie forced to forsake the place of fight, our men ouerthrowing them. *Camares* seeing such euill happe light vpon him, together with them that were ioyned with him, threw himselfe headlong, and was flaine fighting, the fight was performed all by Moone light. The Prince of *Thamas* remained within the campe for to guard it. In the morning the Emperour in person arrived, who found this faire sight, and as he commended the valour of *Axalla* and his diligence, so he blamed the Capraines who were in gard, because

The battell betwene Axalla and Camares.

The ouerthrow and death of Camares.

because they had ill performed their indeuor in repul- sing of the enemis first horsemen: the Emperour caused their inditement to be framed, and two were condemned, who according to the lawes for warre were puni- shed about ten of the clocke in the morning. They of the City, wherein remained full two thousand horse whom they had gathered together, and about sixe thousand footmen, seeing their men ouerthowne, and especially beholding the head of *Camares*, lost their courage, and entred into communication: and the Emperour hauing giuen them his word, they came out to treat, there was a composition made with them, vpon condition, that none of them should reteturne into *Tauris*, but might otherwise go whither they would: so they required to be conducted vnto *Louan*, promising to subiect themselues vnto whatsoeuer the inhabitants of *Tauris* would yeeld vnto, who were greatly aston- ished at the euill hap which did light vpon *Camares*, ac- cusing him of the fault he had committed, to suffer himselfe to be shut vp in this maner. So as the Emperour at that verie instant caused his Armie to march as soone as it was ioyned together, and hee encamped within eight leagues of *Tauris*, his maine battell at *Sedema*, and caused his auanguard (wherein was *Axalla*) to lodge at *Chiara*, who hauing shewed vnto them of *Tauris* the head of him that was ouer their Ar- mie, they were greatly astonished, and the Princes pleasure being sent vnto them by an Herald, they were in great trouble, as well by meanes of the part Prince *Guines* had within the City, who vpon this disgrace happening vnto the contrary partie, would make no doubt to be obeied, vpon which occasion they being all of them retired into one of the quarters of *Tauris*,

A composition with certaine of the inhabitants of Tauris.

Talismahar
chosen Prince
of Tauris.

they determined openly to fauour the Emperour, assuring themselves of peace and mildnesse. Now you must understand that the inhabitants of *Tauris* had chosen *Thalismahar* for their Prince, and sworne fealty between his hands after they had perceiued the approach of the Emperours Army; so as he was no longer acknowledged onely as Captaine generall, but for their Prince, and hauing received a solemne oth of them all, they had euery one sworne vnto him to dye, rather then obey the *Tartarians*, or to acknowledge anie thing that commeth from them: but seeing their affaires for to change, they repented themselves alreadie, so inconstant a thing is the election of a new Prince, who tooke vp on him to fight with the *Tartarians* in a raunged battel, and to driue the fighting euich into their owne country. But now when they did see so great an Armie draw neare vnto them, being victorious ouer so manie sundrie nations, and especially the experience of their force and valour by the ouerthrow of *Democares*, it troubled them much to be shut vp, especially seeing he had made them promise, that the enemie should not approach within foure leagues of their walles. This murmuring was spoken aloude, and the most obstinate, who were their Priestes, and who did abhorre the chaunge of the religion they held, and which would not receive the new reformation of *Guines*, nor his superstitions, they were the first which began to stirre vp the people, and to exhorte them to thinke vpon their safetie, declaring vnto them how vaine their Princes promise was, and that he deceived them, their destruction being a thing most manifest; that they should remember them selues of *Caire*, and so many thousands of Cities, the which

this

this *Tamerlan* hath brought vnder his subiection, and peraduenture hee would not constraine them to obey *Guines*, but the Emperour only: and that it was the best way to send vnto him. This opinion remained three dayes to bee considered of amongst the people, and euen the greatest fell into this opinion, although they did see that they were able to make resistance more then three moneths, but hoping for no other succour but the death of *Tamerlan* who was young, and that euen his Captaines would not leaue his glorie imperfect, before they had atchieued this glorious enterprize, that all this did bring vnto them small hope of safety. *Axalla* was aduertised of al this by the spies which went and came to and fro, being most aduanced, and thereof gaue intelligence vnto the Emperour. But in the end, feare together with the desire of change preuailed so much with them, that they of *Guines* faction sent vnto the Emperour for to know his pleasure, and to take assurance for their safetie. But they were not the

The fation of
Guines within
the citie of
Tauris sent
vnto *Tamerlan*.

sixt part: notwithstanding a bodie cannot haue so small an euill in anie one of his parts, that it shall not greatly empaire the health of all the rest. This canker although it was little at the begining, did dayly increase and went on augmenting. The Prince of *Tauris* being aduertised of these two factions, the one of *Guines* sent vnto the Emperour, knew not how to remidie the same; for the enemie being so neare, and thinges so disposed, he doubted a great reuolt, and did wisely beare all with patience vntill some extremitie, when as hee purposed to vse extreame remedies for his benefite. Now within the Citie of *Guines* faction were some thirtie thousand men, whereof they hauing assured the Emperour, and hauing bene comforted to assur themselues

N 2

of his assistance, they returned from thence, spreading ouer all, the courtesie they had found there with the Emperour, and they published the same aloude amongst the people and that there was no euill meant vnto anie, but to the new chosen Prince; and that the Emperour required nothing of them but their obedience; and that notwithstanding the folly which some seditious had committed in choosing this man for Prince, yet was it not fit to ouerthrow so flourishing a Citie and so manie honest men, for such a light matter; that the Emperour required but the life of this new elected, and of his confederates, and not of the inhabitants. In the ende matters came vnto this passe, that they of *Guines* faction had assembled the people, and caused the same Embassadours whom they had sent vnto *Tamerlan*, to declare aloude vnto the people, being assembled, what they had heard the Emperour say, the which was; that he directed his armes onely against the elected Prince, and not against the City. Presently thereupon some cried; let vs arme our selues against such as will gainsay this: & there was neither the inaesty of the senators, nor the arms of the soldiers, that could stay this sedition. The new Prince withdrew himselfe into his lodging, where being intrenched and desirous to entermeddle his authoritie, he was desired to retire vnto the Pallace, into some corner about his Castell, with those of his faction: and seeing himselfe weake, hee determined to forsake the Citie, and to withdraw himselfe vnto the Mountaines. The Emperour being aduertized of this happy successe by *Axalla*, who came vnto him, & declared vnto him this purpose, to the ende he might haue leaue to cut of the way vnto the Prince elected. But the Emperour hauing meditated

long

*A assault with-
in the City of
Tauris.*

long thereupon wold not hazard anie thing rashly but let him go, and rather take that great city through their diuision then by his armes: he therefore commanded *Axalla* to suffer him to retire, and to send none vnto the warre, being vnwilliug to enterprise any thing by armes, to the end they shold haue a greater confidence in his mercie. The night following the Prince elected departed away, together with those of his faction, who had bene onely fifteene dayes Prince of the common wealth, whereof he had bin Captaine the space of eight and twenty yeares with all prosperity, hauing stoutly resisted the superstitions of *Guines*, and the tyrannie the which he would vnder colour of this new godlinesse bring vpon the *Persians*: and surely if the ouer sight of *Camares* had not bene, his affaires had not received so bad successe, which doth teach vs that the matters of warre are so vncertaine, as it is necessary to haue alwayes regard vnto the most sure way, and preserue the principall matter. For if those forces had not departed out of *Tauris* nor hazarded them, there had bene worke for our Armie the space of sixe moneths. And you know what chaunces and nouelties do commonly happen in the estate of so great a monarkie as is ours, the which hauing so great a breadth of country, it is not possible but some new alteration must daylie needs happen within the same, especially seeing long sieges are oftentimes the destrucciō of great armies, & principally in such an estate as ours was, which hauing bin out of his own country the space of two years, it drew neare home, so as it was hard to keepe them from seuering during so long abode. The Prince elected had many perfections, and was surely worthy to succeed in this monarchy before *Guines*: but the destiny had thus limited his glorie

*The Prince
elected depa-
rting out of
Tauris.*

That same hauing happened, all the Citie being ioyned together, sent vnto the Emperour, desiring eight dayes respite for to treate with him, and yeeld them selues vnder his obedience, the which the Emperour graunted them willingly. And this they did, to the end they might haue time to prouide the meanes to keepe them selues from the gouernement of *Guines*, & his superstition, or rather reformation in the Prophets law: for the faction of *Guines* which was smal in respect of the other parties could do very little. So the time being come, they sent to treate with the Emperour: and the first article was, that they did beseech that it would please him to cause them to be gouerned by one of his owne subiects, & that they might not be seuered frō his obedience; that they doubted not but that *Guines* would remember the resistance they had made against him; that they beseeched his imperiall Maiestie, he might haue no commandement ouer them; a thing verie acceptable vnto the Prince, what good answer soeuer he had giuen vnto *Guines* to bring them subiect vnder him. The other was, that they shold be maintained in their priuiledges, and acknowledged as subiects vnto the Tartarian Empire, and not any longer vnto that of the *Persians*. That they wished this great Monarchie that had so long time flourished, should be chaunged in the time, and vnder the raigne of so great and coragious an Emperour of the Tartarian nation, as our Prince *Tamerlan* was: to the end the reproch of their nation might be the lesse. That they desired not to be freed frō ordinarie tributes, although it might please the Emperour to consider the great warres they had lately maintained against *Guines* for preseruation of their libertie; and that it would please him to ease them of the same. The Emperour who was of a curteous nature, made

Articles of
treaties sent by
the inhabitants
of *Tanais* vnto
Tamerlan.

1

them subiect vnder him. The other was, that they shold be maintained in their priuiledges, and acknowledged as subiects vnto the Tartarian Empire, and not any longer vnto that of the *Persians*. That they wished this great Monarchie that had so long time flourished, should be chaunged in the time, and vnder the raigne of so great and coragious an Emperour of the Tartarian nation, as our Prince *Tamerlan* was: to the end the reproch of their nation might be the lesse. That they desired not to be freed frō ordinarie tributes, although it might please the Emperour to consider the great warres they had lately maintained against *Guines* for preseruation of their libertie; and that it would please him to ease them of the same. The Emperour who was of a curteous nature, made

shew

shew there of in good earnest towards this people, and made grant vnto them that they shold liue without any constraint in their religion, aswell after the reformatiō of *Guines*, as after the law of *Mahomet* according vnto the interpretation of *Haly*, and also the Christians and Iewes should be likewise free, as they had alwayes vsed and accustomed. All other demands being granted, they submitted themselues vnder his obedience, and the next day came from thence three hundred principall men of the city, who performed the oth of fealtie, in the name of all the people. The Emperour after this, determined of his entry: so Prince *Axalla* was commanded to enter the first thereinto with fifteene thousand horse, & thirty thousand footmen; they deliuered into his hands all the fortresses giuing commandement for honour and obedience vnto the Emperour: he seised vpon the gates, and caused proclamation to be made, that all the Citizens should bring their weapons into his lodging, the which was done. So the Emperour arriued there in great magnificence, being receiued with the full reioycing of all the people, and he was almost worshipped of euery one, thinking theselues happie to be sau'd from such a shipwracke. The next day the Emperour had newes of the death of the Emperour his yngle, by the Empresse who had apprehended some great men that would haue rayſed vp some tumult: he made great lamentation for him; yet it was the leſſe grieuous vnto him, for that he knew his great sicknesse, which did threaten him with death of long time: & had not the kindnesse of the Empresse his daughter bin, who had such care of him as she ought for to haue, oldage had made an end of him long before. The Emperour caused these newes to be concealed from the army, bewailing the same priuatly, he dif-

*Tamerlan his
entrance in
to the city of
Tanais.*

Prince Axalla
dispatched by
Tamerlans in
to Tartaria
after the death
of the great
Cham.

Tamerlans
abused through
Guines blimes.

Guines
practise with the
Chancellor and
other Princes
about Tamer-
lan.

patched Prince Axalla (in whom amongst all the rest of his Captains he repos'd greatest trust) for that he had chieft authoritie with him, to the end he might assist and aide the Empresse wih counsell, with full power of Lieutenāt generall vnder the Empresse: he caried thirty thousand horse with him, causing a rumour to be spread, that the Emperour aduaunced forward. Who in the meane time gaue order for the assuring of *Persia* and restraining *Guines*, of whom he had discouered manie practises, that tended vnto the Monarchie of the *Persians*. Axalla being also contrarie vnto him, and hauing as much as he could fauoured the contrarie faction, he had set downe as a *Maxime* vnto the Emperour the assuring of *Persia*, and that he should seeke the weakening of *Guines* faction. But he Emperour hauing sent him farre from him, being naturally religious, suffered him selfe to be caried away with the fained holiness of *Guines*, which did great hurt, but not during the Emperours time: for he durst not during his life, but yet vnto his posteritie: Monarkes deseruing no lesse blame for not prouiding for the quiet of their posteritie, as for seeking an assurance only during their raigne. For the Emperour hauing suffered *Guines* to come neare vnto him, he knew so cunningly to behaue him selfe, winning the *Chancellor* and the other Princes of the Emperours counsell, that they brought him neare vnto the Emperour; and being there he knew so well to carry him felte, that he made the Prince for to tast his manner of seruing God, as most answereable vnto the last will of the Prophet. Notwithstanding the Emperour knowing how much the change of his maner of seruing God, was acceptable vnto the people whō he gouerned, although he allowed it, he did not practise the same: but very se-
cretly

cretly he assembled together the principall men of the law, to make triall for to agree this controwersie: but he did see this to be impossible, so stiffly euery one held his interpretation to be according to the true meaning of the Prophet, wherein hauing spent some time in vaine, in the meane time hee receiued the oth of all the *Persians*, & gathered together great store of money, where-with he had payed his armie, and gratified his men of warre, rewarding them after their desertes, he establisched the Prince of *Thana* to coimand ouer them in his absence, with whom he left an hundred thousand feotemen of his armie, to the end for to suffer the same to winter in all the Cities, and through all the countrey, to keepe all in subiection, and refresh it selfe. The rest did the Emperour conduct with him, and all his pri-
soners of what qualitie soeuer, except those whom he gaue vnto *Guines*, for to instruct them in his refor-
mation. But the matter fell out much otherwise, for hauing framed them well vnto the warre, as soone as the Prin-
ces death happened, he vsed their seruice for to assure his affaires amongst the *Persians*, vpon the first occasion should be offered, whereby he thought he might attaine vnto his purposes: for the Prince hauing led him with him, he made him beleue that he had no kinde of am-
bition, but onely religion; in so much as he making pro-
fession of his religion neare vnto the Emperours person, many applied the selues vnto the same. Now he percei-
ued well that the Prince had some ialousie of him: this was the occasion he desired to follow him, assuring him selfe the *Tartarians* would in short time cause the selues to be hated of the *Persians*. The Emperour invited all the greatest Lords of *Persia* to accompanie him vnto *Sa-
marcad*, which they did vpō the cōmandemēt of the sayd

The cunning
practises of
Guines under
the cloake of
religion.

Emperour, being desirous to teach them for to serue him, the *Persian* gentlemen being so many little kings, and also that during the time he was in his Court he made them for to know his courtesie and magnificence, and did win them by good deedes, aduancing them also vnto the honors of his Court, and vnto the charges of his kingdomes, wherein he employed them: so as *Fersia* as long as he liued was much affected vnto him: which greatly serued him for the keeping as well of *Siria* as of the *Soldans* Empire, leauing cōtinually me there, & drawing out colonies, the better to settle his affaires in those places. So the Emperour leauing the Prince of *Thanais* with his Army to attend his pleasure, he marched with the rest of his forces into his owne country, with all the ioyes and triumphes that might be possible, the chiefest prisoners marching before the Emperour, amongst the which was *Baiazet* Emperour of the Turkes allchained, and was a spectacle vnto all the world of fortunes inconstancy: he continued notwithstanding in the same fiercenesse was wont to be in him. So where soever the Emperor passed, the people assembled them selues by thousands, praising & singing his victories. We arriued at the

Tamerlan and his army came vnto Samarcand withall their spoyles. last at Samarcand with all our spoyles, in very great magnificence : where after we had bin the space of one moneth or two in feastings and magnificences, the Emperor with his accustomed devotion , hauing in great solemnity vowed a Church and Hospitall vnto his God, the most magnificent that might be devised. Whereupon to perform the same, he began to search out all sorts of handicrafts men for to honour this city, the which he had a desire to make one of the statelyest Cities in the world . And in one of the corners thereof he began, and did build there his Temple and Hospitall , making

king an accoimpt to increase yet this Citie, as large
againe as it was, and to people the same, with so ma-
nie feuerall kindes of people and nations as hee had
brought with him, giuing libe:tie vnto them all to
fraine and build their houses, causing money to be di-
stributed to do the same, and giuing all kinds of priu-
ledges and freedomes vnto the prisoners, for to giue
the a greater desire to build and settle theimselues there:
and hauing caused the streets and places to be plotted,
and hauing appointed a place for euerie one to build
vpon, he tooke no other pleasure, neither had he anie
other care, then the preseruing the good will of his most
famous souldiers, whose names he hauing caused to
be written in a generall muster booke, the which hee
commaunded to be made, from day to day, they (not
thinking thereof) receiued honours, and good turnes
of the Prince, in recompence of their so great ser-
vices. Now he declared the death of the Emperour his
vnkle vnto his Counsell, and forgot no ceremony due
vnto the honor of the said Emperour, outwardly shew-
ing the grief he conceiued for his death; where after he
had rested some eight dayes, he determined to go vnto
Quinzai for to see the Empresse, and hauing left *Baia-*
zet in the custody of the gouernor of *Zachetay*, the Em-
peror set forward with his ordinarie court, which was
of fortie thousand horse, and threescore thousand foot-
men. I had forgotten to declare, that the Emperour sent
backe the *Mosciuities* forces with rich presents, and dis-
patched *Sinopes* nephew of Prince *Axalla*, for to conduct
them out of the country of his obedience, as also to the
end for to confirme a new friendship with him: for to
leauie nothing during his voyage that might be an occa-
sion of nouelty, hauing for that time made an end of his

Tamerlan
buils a temple
and hospitall
at Samarcand.

Tamerlan his
ordinarie cour
of forty thou-
sand horse and
threescore
thousand foot-
men.

Tamerlan his
wife for sight.

enterprises, hee was altogether bent to preserue the friendship of his allies, and for the maintenance of his conquestes. This was the cause that before he departed from *Quinzai*, he dispatched towards the Prince of *Thanais*, one of his most faithfull counsellers called *Nobazes*, to the end he should haue an eye vnto the factiōns of the *Persians*, and also for to succor all the places that should haue neede, as well on the side of *Caire* as towards the *Mediterran* sea, to the ende that nothing should be chaunged during his absence, giuing him charge moreouer that the pollicy and discipline should in his Armie be carefully obserued, and commanding him to credit *Nobazes*, verie expert in the art of warre. So the Emperour being come vnto *Cambalu*, he received newes of the battell *Odmar* had wonne against the king of *Chinas* Captaine generall, and how he pursued his victorie, hauing taken three or foure great and rich Cities, the which did yelde themselues vnto him, and that againe the *Chinois* did desire peace. The Emperour sent the Articles he required, which were that before all other things the king of *China* should pay the arrerages of the tribute the which he had agreed with the Emperor. First he should come in person to do homage vnto his Maiesty, & acknowledge himselfe as vasall vnto his Empire. That the Army should withdraw it selfe during his voyage, and he should deliuer vp vnto him all his Cities, sauing three such as the Emperour should nominate; and that the things should be restored vnto the same estate they were in before the war, when the Emperor made the first peace; that he shold pay the army for sixe moneths, and shold also satisfie all the expences of the war, seeing he had begun it, & was author of the breach of peace. Then the Emperour gratified *Od-*

Articles of a
new agreement
betweenne T-
amerlan and the
king of China.

1

2

3

4

mar

mar, sending vnto him for wife one of his sisters with all magnificence that might be, for to make him the more affectioned vnto him. I will declare how the Emperour was received at *Cambalu* by his subiects with all the magnificence possible, the Emperour for to gratifie them hauing restored their priuiledges, the which hee had taken from them, for the rebellion they had committed with *Calix*: so as the Emperour went ouer all gratifying his subiects for this new succession that was lately fallen vnto him, all the companies coming vnto him: for in these countries they haue no certaine dwellings, they are alwayes wandring in troupes wheresoeuer they go: thither the Empresse (hauing left Prince *Axalla* to gouerne at *Quinzai*) came vnto him. The Prince remained there almost two moneths, hauing in this place giuen order for all the affaires he had. *Cambalu* was also neare vnto mount *Althay*, where they vse to burie the *Scithian* Emperours, whom we do call the great *Cham*. The Emperour caused the bodie of the Emperour his vnkle to be brought thither, and him selfe wold conduct it with all pompe, honoring not only his body, but also al that he had loued in the world, & although it was not the custome to cause women for to assist the funerals, yet wold he affoord this honor vnto the Empresse, that she shold assist the bringing of the body, going neare vnto the same. This he did, the more to make appeare how much he honored the memory of the late Emperor in his wife, being his daughter, & also to the end that if God did take him away his childe being small, she shold haue the greater authority, & be the better acknowledged worthy to gouerne in the minority of his children; and also for that she had bene brought vp alwayes in authority euen since she was married.

Mount Althay
the burying
place of the
Scithian Em-
perors called
the great Cam.The magni-
ficent funeral
of the great
Cam of Tarta-
ria.

Tamerlan his
virtuous and
christ loue vnto
his good wife.

The Prince desiring thereby the more to acknowledge the honour the Emperour his vnkle had done him, by adopting him as his son, and in hauing left him so great and large an Empire, as that was, whereof he left vnto him the possession. Now the Emperour loued her onely, hauing no other affection in such pleasure, but only the happiness of a faire of-spring, the which he hoped for. Now the body of the late Emperour being come vnto Cambalu, he determined to conduct it vnto the buriall according vnto the accustomed ceremonie, and to put the body with the kings & Emperors his ancesters. After he had from point to point performed the last will and testament of the late Emperor, hee returned from thence vnto Cambalu, where he spent all winter in tilt & turneying, going a hunting, making his abode there, because he was in a place nearest vnto the kingdome of China, to know how matters passed there, hauing now brought thither his last affaires, purposing to go thither in person the next winter, if Odmar did not make an end of the wars already begun, and if the king of China did not submit himselfe wholly vnder his obedience, hauing determined not to depart from Cambalu vntill this country were pacified, the marke hee shot at being only to keepe that which his valour was able to conquer through his good fortune, being desirous to spend the rest of his life in enjoying the frutes of his travells, & for to publish his praises vnto his people, and with millions to maintaine them in peace. He had also a purpose to bring vnto an end that which he had determined to do at Samarcand. Now Axalla was at Quinzai, as well vnto the cōtentment of al the men of war, as the inhabitants, who desired much to see their Prince, and hauing caused Prince Axalla in their behalfe to beseech it, that it would

wold please the Emperor to cause his son to be brought vp amongst them there, the which he did grant vnto the in fauour of the sayd Prince Axalla, establishing him for to command in the absence of the Prince his sonne, whom he made gouernour of Quinzai, from Cambalu even vnto the sea. This country was replenished with some three hundred cities, and was in largenesse more then foure hundred leagues, besides an infinite number of villages. To make short, it was that the Emperour his vnkle gouerned, where this Prince Axalla was his Lieutenant general, vnder the authority of the yong Prince his son, vnto whom he deliuered him in charge for to be his gouernour, authorising him vnto the gouernement generall of all his kingdoms: for the great wisedome that was in this knight, made him beloved in all the countries vnder the Emperours obedience: the seruices also and great victories the which he had caused the Emperour to obtaine by his stout courage, and good conduct, who for these occasions put his principall trust in him, and after himselfe he thought him onely worthy to preserue for his children his kingdome and Empresse. Now he receiued newes that the Prince of Thanaïs set forward for to go into Syria, and to ioyne with the gouernour, for that the Soldan had thesethree moneths besieged Caire with a great army, notwithstanding the inhabitants had shewed great faithfulness: they were indeed all new colonies, not trusting vnto the old Citizens: for had not that course bin taken, there should haue bin many reuolts seene, the gouerner not hauing sufficient forces to be able to assist it. The Emperor once againe had giue cōmandement vnto the Prince of Thanaïs, to march thither in diligence with his army, wherin were the old soldiers ordained by the Emperor, & his cōpaniōs in all his

The young
Prince made
gouernour of
Quinzai and
over all the
country.

Axalla appoin-
ted the yong
Princes gouer-
nour, and au-
thorised over
all the king-
doms of Ta-
merlan, as gou-
ernor genera-
lall.

The Prince of
Thanaïs sent
into Egypte to
affit Caliber.

warres; there were of them an hundred thousand of this kinde of warfarre, amongst the which there were thirty thousand *Parthian* horse remaining continually in the armie. Now they lamented much the absence of *Axalla*: but next vnto him the Prince of *Thanais* was most beloued of them; this Prince was the Emperours cousin germaine, who as you haue heard, had serued him very well; he had bene continually in all the enterprises of warre vnder *Axalla*, whom the Emperour had commanded fo: to leade him vnto all the seruices of warre, to the end he might be made fit for to do him seruice; so as the Prince of *Thanais* being in *Syria*, and Prince *Axalla* at *Quinzai*, they were established in the two furthermost partes of his kingdomes, Princes and Captaines who had alwayes assited and serued him faithfully. So the Prince of *Thanais* being with *Calibes*, and hauing gathered together part of the Great *Chamberlaines* forces vpon the coast of *Babilon*, he marched directly vnto *Aleppo*, hauing their forces ioyned together, being two hundred thousand fighting men. The *Soldan* perceiving the Prince of *Thanais* to draw neare, remembred well, that those were they which had overcome him. But he encouraged him self, because this great *Tamerlan* & his fortune were not there present; that he had to deale with a yong Prince desirous of glory, & who peraduenture to get it would do something vnaudisely; & to resolute him selfe for to fight, was a thing he had too much proued vnto his hurt, except the hot bleud of this yong Prince did moue him inconsiderately to seeke for to force his trenches and succour the necessitie of those of *Caire*, whose victuals failed the. So he intreched himself all along the riuier, by the which onely the inhabitants might be relieved: for so great a citie canot be victualld by

by cartes, but verie hardly: he made his trenches euē at his pleasure, our armie aduancing forward slowly. The counsell of ours was to send throughout all *Siria* to gather together store of corne, and to cause it to be brought vnto *Alexandria* by sea, for to victual there-with *Caire*, aswell from all the Isles of *Greece*, as from all the sea coasts. Being obedient vnto his cōmandemēt they shewed great diligence, so as within short time there was gotten together a great quātity of corne. Our army in the meane time marched continually forward, drawing neare vnto *Caire*, the enemy being retired at the same present, seeing our armie come along by the riuier side, hauing made great prouisiō of boats to passe ouer his armie, & for to keepe vs from the riuier. In the end, the Prince of *Thanais*, hauing approched his army, and marked the enemies countenance, who was intrenched within his campe, he entred into *Caire*, where hauing with good order distributed that which hee had brought in carts, & vpon Mules & Camels, by the hands of Cōmissioners whō he had appointed, seeing the people had victuals sufficient for 15. daies, hauing taken the aduise of the Captaines of his counsell, he was counselleld to cut off victuals from the enemies, and to take from them the riuier, and therby the victuals which did come vnto them from three or foure cities they had taken, the which had put them in hope they should be able to famish this great citie; he resolued to take those from them. In the mean time they prepared in *Alexandria* the victualing againe thereof by the riuier, and whilſome rigged certaine armed boates for to fight with those of the *Soldan*, the Prince of *Thanais* marched directly aboue *Caire*, straight vnto *Miare*, the which he shymmoned to yeeld it selfe vnto the great Emperour of

*Good foresight
in the Prince
of *Thanais* of
the victualing
of *Caire* and
Egypt from the
Grecian lande*

*The Prince of
Thanais doth
bring victuals
into *Caire*.*

*The Prince of
Thanais acti-
ons in Egypt,
and happy suc-
cess in the
same.*

The siege of
Bluia, with
the taking of
the same by
force.

Asia his maister, the which they hauing refusid were besieged, and hauing caused all his engines to be planted, and great hollow trenches to be made, to the end he might approch neare ynto a tower, the which he determined to winne by vndermining, because it did defend all the courtaine, so as our men as well by the height thereof, as for that there was an infinite quantitie of artificiall fire therein, were greatly endamaged. The Prince of *Thanaïs* hauing caused it to be viewed by him who had the charge of mynes in the Armie, he promised within foure dayes to ouerthrow it, the which hee hauing performed, our men did winne the courtaine. Now the Prince of *Thanaïs* hauing caused an engine to approch, they tryed the wall, and finding it weake, they brought foure more thereunto, the which did beate downe a great part of the wall vnto the ground. This being done, our men were commaunded to giue an assault, the which was giuen, and the citie wonne, all beeing cut in peeces which were within the same, the women and litle children onely excepted. The other cities seeing the diligence we had vsed, & the small succour they had receiued from the *Soldan*, yeelded themselues vpon the first summons, & were receiued vpon good cōposition. The Prince of *Thanaïs* hauing left two or three thousand horse and 4000. footmen within the places he had take, he thought it not conuenient to stay any longer, considering the want of victuals, wherof he doubted: & surely the *Soldan*, who was a great Captaine, had with great wisdome prouided for the well fortifying of those cities which were aboue him: for it had bene our ouerthrow if they had obeied the cōmandement he gaue them, being certaine that within fifteene dayes, victuals would

haue

haue failed vs. But it falleth out ofte times, that the Generals are blamed, & that their enterprises haue ill succeſſe, not for that they haue prouided ill for that which shold be done, but rather because there was either feare or disobedience in the which are commaunded, & who were credited in a matter of importance. As soone as the Soldan vnderstood these newes, he began new pra-ctises, especially knowing for certaine that our army by ſea ſet forward frō *Alexandria*. And hauing caused his ſtorehouſes to be reuiewed, & calling together the generaſls for victuals within his army, they did assure him that he might continue thirtie dayes without hauing any want, and to performe this, he droue out of his army all that were vnprefitible, and caused them to paſſe ouer the water, thrusting them out to trie their for-tune, to retire into *Libia*, or whither they would at the conquerors mercie. The Prince of *Thanaïs* whose reſolution had taken good effect, the which ſeemed im-poffible vnto the old Captaines, got thereby amongst his ſouldiers great reputation, and euē verily iudging that the euent of the victorie, and of the deliberation of *Caire* proceeded from that part: but it behoued to end well, and this was the hardest to be performed, and it ſeemed vnto euery one that this was a prize for a ma-ſter to execute, euerie one lamenting the Empērours abſence for this purpose, one wishing his boldneſſe, another his diligence, and another his reputation, the which onely made his enemies for to flie: others ſaide of the Prince of *Thanaïs*, that at ſuch time as he did any thing brauely, or rather whenſoever he had any good ſuccesſe, that he remembred well the Emperours fashions, & that he was a good ſcholler, preſently they wished for the liberality of Prince *Axalla*, & remembred

The numeri-
full aſt of the
Soldan.

The ſpeech of
the ſouldiers
in the Prince
of *Thanaïs*
campe.

The number
of the Soldans
armie.

the daungers whereinto he would put himselfe one of the first. This was the speech of the souldiers, when as they remembred those that had so often commaunded them. Now the Prince of *Thanais* encamped his armie vnder *Echid* and *Sebeit*, vpon a riuver which maketh an arme of *Nilus*, but to be passed ouer in many places. The *Soldan* was intrenched as I haue declared at *Bul-dao*, hauing made wonderfull trenches on euery side, euuen vnto the riuver of *Nilus*. There were in his armie threescore thousand footmen & fortie thousand horse: but all very good men, and the most part of them were his old souldiers. Now he had fed them much with the hope of taking *Caire*, whereupon he grounded the recouering of his kingdome: but the souldiers perceiving there came no more any thing from aboue downe the riuver, beganne to despaire: notwithstanding the *Soldan* assured himselfe, that within fifteene dayes our armie should be driuen to retire, and that *Caire* would be consumed with famine, so as he kept himselfe close and secret, busying himselfe onely in keeping the riuver with a great number of boates. The Prince on the other side seeing his enemie intrenched, he exercised his souldiers in making a trench before the enemie, being a daungerous thing for to be encamped without a trench neare vnto an armie, although our armie was greater by one thirde part of footmen more then horsemen. Nowe wee made our abode staying for *Calibes*, who came forwarde with the victuall that was prouided. In the meane time wee forbare not to make dayly skirmishes, to the end for to discouer where wee might with greatest aduantage set vpon the enemie, thereby to make them keepe close within their trenches, and also to the end they

they should not haue the means to hinder our men frō passing, in succouring their armie which was vpon the water, at such time as our men would passe along with the victuals. So *Calibes* cōming forwarde, forgot not to aduertise the Prince of *Thanais* of the meetingplace, to the end he might receiue 20000. men frō his army, the which it was necessarie also to embarke & put vpon the water, the which he was desirous to doe without the enemis knowledge: for he made small reckoning of the forces which were come from *Alexandria*. *Calibes* was determined to fight vpon the water, with hope to cause his victuals for to passe, or else to die himselfe and his companie. The Prince of *Thanais* earnestly desired to vndertake this charge: but some declared vnto him, that the importance of the fight was vpon the land, as also it belonged vnto *Calibes* to dispose of all within his governement, for to fight at the verie same time (according to the enemis countenance) with the whole armie, the enemis being within their trenches, if in case he did seuer himselfe from his footemen, to assist his armie vpon the water, or else if he went about to put fresh souldiers into his boates and Galliotes: for we were within two thousand paces the one from the other, so as euery one was assured that the day would not passe away, but they would set vpon the enemis within their trenches, especially they which knew the heate of this young Prince, the which had come to passe, but that the Emperour had placed two olde Counsellers neare about him, who knewe how to temper this his forwardnesse, who was notwithstanding greatly cōmended for animating of the souldiers, accustomed vnder the good fortune of the Emperour to attempt any thing, although very hard

Calibes com-
ming downe
the riuver of
Nilus to *Caire*.

Synopes.

and daungerous. So the Prince of *Thanais* hauing heard news of the army by water, he sent thither with all speed thirteene or fourteene thousand of the most expert souldiers within his armie, vnder the conduct of the Coloneil of his footmen (who was his Lieutenant when as the Emperour himselfe commaunded in his armie) called *Synopes*, brought vp a Captaine vnder Prince *Axalla*, at such time as he had the generall commandement ouer the footmen. The Prince at the same very time he supposed the fleete to drawe neare vnto that place the enemie had fortified with oakes, with boates, and galliots, caused all the armie to mount on horsebacke, & appointed fortie thousand souldiers to march directly vnto a place the which he had noted to be most easie & for his best aduantage, for that the enemie had as he thought traueld least in that place, who (doubting the Prince would lodge betweene the citie of *Caire* and him) had there emploied the most of his time. There was also in this place a litle mountain, the which he desired this day for to win, & which he had reserued ypon this occasion to force, the better to entartaine the enemis, & restraine them if they went about to succour their men that were assaulted by water. Now as he had determined, so did he force this place strongly, but the greatest matter was to stay the fury of those which had giuen the onset: for they would haue gone vnto the second trench, the which the *Soldan* did thinke: and the Prince of *Thanais* making shew to giue the onset, busied the *Soldan* so in the mean time, that he could not succour his men, hauing enough to do for to defend himselfe, so as during the time he was thus hindered, he did behold our Nauie fighting, & all his Gallies to be broken in peeces, and yet could not aide them: for our men hauing

hauing landed in an Iland frō whence they were greatly annoyed, hauing assaulted it, they did force it, and whatsocuer was intrenched within the same, and then this Ilād which was as a Caualier for the defēce of their mē, who defended the bridges of boats they had made, being takē, was a great disaduātage vnto thē: insomuch The valours of Synopes, by means wherof he obtained a notable victory of the Soldan men entombed within an Iland in the river of Niles. Calibes drowned. A stratageme. as this fight after it had cōtinued for the space of three hours, the victory inclined on our sides, by the valor of *Synopes*, who seeing *Calibes* drowned, & most part of his men in flight, he renued the fight, and being resolute, caried away the victory, and vtterly ouerthrew the enemis bridge, the which they had forsaken by the means of a currant of water full of artificiall fire, the which cōming to rush against it, did burne the whole bridge, which was one of the principal causes of the victory. So the victuals passed, and our victorious army encamped within this Iland, the which our men had wonne, for to giue passage vnto the rest of the victuals. The Prince of *Thanais* caused three engines of artillerie to be imbarke presentely, for to shoot into the enemis camp vpon the riuers banke, at such tyme as they shoulde shew theselues for to hinder our victuals. It was a great losse of *Calibes*, because he was a person in whom the Emperor put great trust, and hee had done him great seruices. They busied theselues in seking for his body, the which could not be found, by reason of the great multitude of bodies which were within the riuer. They hold opinion that therē died twentie thousand men this day on both sides, few of *Calibes* men being saued, who had giuen the onset vpon the left wing of the enemis. *Synopes* obtained great honour, and this day was the occasion of his good fortune. Also he had done a notable peece of seruice worthie to be remembred, there being no possible

meanes to succour *Caire*, but by that same place: for this great citie was so weakened, that it required a long time for to repaire it, the which could not be done by land, but only by the riuer, looking for the revolt the which could not be sooner then the three moneths. Now after this victorie *Synopes* encamped himself within this lland to hinder the *Soldans* men from passing, notwithstanding they passed ouer in the night from the one shoare vnto the other, & they iudged that the enemies were forced vnto the fight, or vnto a shamfull flight, the which could not be but by the other side of the water; for by land he had no retrait at all, but by the swords point, hauing no place but beyond the water, the which bred suspition that he would make his retrait by water. For he might wel thinke that *Caire* was not for him, & that his enterprise on that side was weake. As for those which faoured him within *Alexandria*, all was changed there, & in a manner euery where. Therfore it behoued the Prince of *Thanaïs*, to haue a watchful eie vnto the enemies new practises, and to prouide well for the maintenance of his army, the which could not be done without difficultie, by reason of the scarcenesse of the victuals: for by feeding his armie he famished *Caire*. For there could not come victuals sufficient, neither by land nor water, for to victuall it being encamped so neare vnto the enemy: our army hauing made prouision for victuals but for 8. dayes, keeping theselues encamped in one place, so as it was resolued by the Counsell to retire theselues assoone as they had deliuered *Caire*, & seche the same victualled. For they supposed the enemies had made great prouision of victuals to be able to continue in their campe, their armie not being so great as ours. Insomuch as it was resolued to passe ouer halfe our Armie

Armie vnto the other side, and that *Synopes* shold not remoue out of the lland, our purpose being no other then to hinder that the enemies shold not keepe the victuals from entring into *Caire*. This counsell was verie secret, in so much as the enemies perciuing their victuals for to faile, had the same purpose that we had, the which was to retire theselues, the which they could not do but in the night. Hauing as yet many boates they rigged them, and the day before made a shewe to drawe towardes *Syria*, hauing caused part of their Armie to go out of their Campe, supposing that assoone as they shold shew theselues to go out, our Armie would be on horsebacke, and by that meanes shold deceiue our men, hoping that this would make them thinke they had a purpose to retire theselues on this part, the which they did: for hauing in the night made shew of assaulting our Armie, and hauing kindled fires, hee caused his men to passe ouer, and to lode theselues along the riuer, what hindrance soever *Synopes* could do vnto them, for that the night was verie darke. The first that passed ouer was the *Soldan*, hauing left within his Campe his Lieutenant generall with all his footmen. In the morning we knewe that their Armie passed in part; the Prince of *Thanaïs* was of opinion to assalt the enemies within their camp, and was verie stiffe in this resolution, but the old Capaines were not of this opinion, but rather to strengthen *Synopes* with men and engines, to the intent to endamage them therewith; & that three-score thousand men were not to be forced within their trenches. So all was deferred: they were yet of opinion, that if noise were heard, and that they passed ouer, to attempt for to force the Campe vpon their retrait. Nowe the

Soldan seeing his passage had good successe, he com-
maunded his men to do the like that he had done: but he
was not aduertised of the supply *Synopes* had received:
so as he returning for to look his men, and guiding the
formost vnto the passage along by the bank side, he was
assaulted by *Synope*, who began the fight, wherein the
Soldan was wounded: notwithstanding he passed ouer
the water & came vnto his men, who had already pas-
sed. There were many of his men slaine, & diuers of his
boats sunke, so as there remained about twentie thou-
sand within the Campe, out of hope of being able to

*The Soldan
wounded in
passing the ri-
ver.*

*The Prince of
Thanais assa-
lled the Soldans
campe, wherein
were twentie
thousand foot-
men left, who
upon parley
yielded them-
selves.*

retire & ioyne themselues vnto the other Armie. Our
souldiers hauing assaulted the Campe, did win the first
trenches: but the second being compassed with men,
and well fortifyed, they were not of opinion to assault
them, to the end we should not hazard that which we
held assured, in so much as our men being wisely con-
ducted, remained encamped within the first trenches:
and it is verie certaine, that if they had gone on further
they had ouercome them, so much did feare & dispaire
take frō them their courage: but it was better to set for-
ward slowly, then to deliuer vnto changeable fortune,
that which the eie of reason judged certain, by the rules
of war: for that had bene a deed offolly & rashnes. Now
the enemy seeing our men so near the, began to parley,
and to cause their interpreters to speake, asking for the
Prince of *Thanais*; amōgst the rest there was a Parthian
Ensigne, who enquired for the said Prince, who at that
time was visiting the guards of the trenches: he com-
maunded that he should be brought vnto him, & hauing
talked with the said Captain, who had bene long a sol-
dier vnder his ensignes, and remaining sicke, had bene
taken, and had given himself vnto the Soldans seruice,
who

who had made him Ensigne generally, whom we do call
Colonel of all the footmen he beseeched the Prince to
receiue frō the victory without shedding the bloud
of his soldiers, or of his own men. The which the Prince
did grant vnto them, causing them to sweare to remain
for euer slaves vnto the Emperour, and his subiectes
for to make warre wheresoever it should please him:
the which they did sweare vnto. The Soldans Lieute-
nant being in the night retired with some of the Cap-
taines into a boate. Now the Soldan being hurt, retired
himselfe with his hortsmane some twentie leagues, vnto
certaine places which he held, where hee died of his
hurt. The Prince of *Thanais* pursuing the said Soldan,
found him, being not yet buried within *Palema*, & was
carefull to giue an honorable buriall vnto the said Sol-
dan, and entertained all his seruants curteouslie. There
remained a sonne of his, with whom did ioyne them-
selues the most part of those which would not submit
themselues vnder the Empire of the Parthians, and
withdrew theselues vnto the borders of *Libia* into cer-
tainie places, whither verie hardly (by reason of the de-
serts of *Libia*) any could come vnto them, in hope to re-
uenge their miserable fortune against the Parthian
name. Thus ended this warre, the which had put the
Emperour into a deliberation to go thither in person.
When as he received perfect newes of our victorie, he
did he commend the valour and courage of the Prince
of *Thanais*, & aboue all the noble mind of *Synope*: but
the losse of *Calibes* did hinder the ful rejoycing for this
happie victorie: for the Emperour did hold the losse of
such a person to be great, who was greatly to bee com-
mended for the experiece he had in the art of war. The
Prince of *Thanais* was appointed by the Emperour to

*The Prince of
Thanais nota-
ble victorie an-
gainst the Sol-
dan.*

*The death of
the Soldan.*

The Prince of *Thanaïs* ap-
pointed gou-
rnor of Syria &
Egypt after
the death of
Calber.
command ouer *Calber*es charge : but the Armie was commanded to returne from thence into *Persia*, for such affaires as mighthappen there. *Synopes* also was appointed Colonel general of the footmen in the Emperours armie. The Prince of *Thanaïs* remaining Gouverner ouer Syria and Egypt, with the same estate of the former Gouvernor, the Armie was conducted back againe by the great Chamberlaine, who was come thither vpon the end of the affaires with new forces for to aide the Prince of *Thanaïs*, if he had any need of the same: the Emperour hauing this custome, to send out forces vpon forces, vnto such places as he thought had need thereof. This happie successe comming vnto the Prince, by the means of his Lieutenants generall, made him for to knowe how necessarie his presence is within his realme, for to giue aide in euerie place, where there were affaires. Now for to returne vnto the Emperours Court: the king of China came to visite him at his Court, according vnto the couenantes offered vnto him, the which he accepted: hee did sweare once againe obedience vnto the Emperour, who caused him to see all his greatest cities, for to make himselfe the more to be feared of this Barbarian, who kept no more promise then pleased himselfe. Hee was astonisched to behold so many souldiers, and the countrey so well replenished with people; and aboue all, that they vsed so little curiositie of riches in their apparell and garments, wondring that the Emperour was apparelled in meane cloath of one colour, without any other fashion: but to counteraile that, he had abouthim men which seemed to be kings. At the same time when the king of China was at the court, the Emperour received newes of the victorie against the Soldan, for the which the

The king of
China came
vnto the Em-
perour *Tamer-
lan*, court, &
did sweare v-
n to him once &
gaine obedi-
e. The meane
apparell of
Tamerlan,
Emperour

Emperour reioyced, making feastes and turnies in his Court in token of mirth, and this reioycing continued for the space of eight dayes. After the Emperor had giuen order for the double paying of his Armie that came into *Persia*, vnder the conduct of the great Chamberlaine, and *Synopes* Colonel general in the imperial Armie, the Emperour went vnto *Quinzay* for to see his sonne, and visite the people of this countrey, who desired his presence, and also for the affaires which hee had not as yet established in these countries, as he had done in all the rest of his kingdomes, Prince *Axalla* not being willing to take so much authoritie vpon him, although the Emperour had sent vnto him a speciall commandement of the same: but hee doubting least this people would take some occasion to murmur, and the fault thereof might haue bene laide vpon him, being wont alwaies to say wisely, that these maner of affaires were the prises of a skilfull Maister, hauing always referred the vnto the Emperors comming. Then did the Prince with equitie cause all to vle the like lawes, the same waightes & measures, & he imposed certaine tributes throughout all his kingdoms, euerie one according to their abilitie, for to help his affaires, and lay the foundation of his reuenues, and store-houses for victuals, the which were dispersed as the want in his Armies required: for the Emperour was wont to say, that an Armie must be made like vnto the shape of a man; he called the *Captaines* the head, the souldiers the armes, money the feet which made it for to march, and victuals the bellie that nourished the whole. In so much as he often said, that an Armie was invincible which had a perfect man: for (said he) it fighteth when it will, and neuer hazardeth any thing to ill purpose:

*An apt compa-
rison.*

*A notable say-
ing of *Tamer-
lan*.*

The description
of the citie of
Quinzay with
the wonderfull
situation thereof

Tamerlan re-
ceived with
great magni-
fice into Quin-
zai with rich
& rare presents

for the ouersights of warre do happen at such time as this body is lame of a leg, or maimed in an arme, or that the bellie is famished, or when the head is sicke. At such time as hee sent the Prince of *Thanaïs* against the Soldan, he doubted nothing but the head and the bellie; because the Prince of *Thanaïs* was a yong Prince: and for victuals, he had but bad prouision of them: for he was wont at such time as he was to begin any war, for to make a great collection of victuals the yeare before, the which was not done now, attributing this victorie vnto his good fortune, which would not turne her backe vpon him, and not vnto his wisdome. So the Emperour arriuing neare vnto *Quinzay*, Prince *Axalla* comming to meeke him two dayes iourney off, with all the chiefe Lords of the countrie, together with the principall Citizens, who were preparing for the Emperour the most magnificent receiuing that might be, as well by water as by land. As this citie is one of the richest in the world, so is it one of the greatest, and of the most wonderfull situation, being all wholly diuided & ouerthwarted with chanelles, vpon the which are framed wonderfull and stately buildings, accompanied with an infinite number of bridges, vpon the which they passe ouer channels: this citie aboundeth with all kind of spicces & in great quantitie, likewise with al maner of marchandizes. The Emperour as soone as he was arriued, received presents of the Citizës, the which were esteemed to be worth aboue two millions of golde, with a wonderfull varietie of all rare and singular things, the which they presented vnto him, for to testifie the loue and obedience they did owe vnto him. The Emperour was desirous to see his son, whom they brought vp with the accustomed greatness of Princes: & hauing caused

the

the child to be brought before him, being of the age of seuen yeares: hee forbad from hence forward they <sup>The order he
ooke for his
sons education.</sup> should suffer him to weare any thing vpon his head, & himselfe did hang a bowe about his necke, saying aloud, that they which from their birth were called vnto soueraignties, should bee vsed both vnto cold and heate, and should be exercised in Armes betimes, and not brought vp delicately and easilly, reprehending them which had the bringing of him vp, demanding of them, if they meant to make a woman of him? And they answering, that he was tender. If he be not borne (said he) for to be strong in Armes, he will not be worthy to succeed me: for hee must not bee an effeminate Prince that shall preserue the Parthian Empire. Nowe he had sent the Empresse vnto *Samarcand* to be deliuered, where she was honorablie receiued, hauing neuer bene there since she was married. He received newes that she was there deliuered of another goodly sonne, a thing which he caused to be published ouer all, & himself in token of ioy, made feasts 15. dayes, with all kinds of magnificent tourneys: this he did for to shew his agilitie vnto this people, to the end, that as he excelled all his court in vertues, that they should also iudge him worthy to gouerneth aboue all other men. After he continued there a moneth, and hauing visited all the sea-townes neare vnto *Quinzai*, hunting all kinds of chases, neglecting nothing notwithstanding which belonged to his charge, saying often, that the recreations hee did take, were helps for to ease him in the pains of his publike affaers wherunto God had called him. Hauing vpon his returne called together all the people, he published his lawes, which were all reuerenced of this people, as though they had proceeded frō the divinitie, so

Tamerlan his
notable saying
of succession in
his Empire.

The Empresse
delivered of an
other son at
Samarcand in
Parthia.

Tamerlan his
recreations, &
notable saying
thereof.

much admiration had euerie one of the greatnesse of this Prince. The which I will trulie declare vnto you, that so long as the Emperour was there, this people did almost nothing, being for the most part busied in beholding of him, not finding anie greater contentation then that. Some of his courtiers, and amongst the rest Prince *Axalla* said one day vnto him, that this was a Citie fit for his abode. O my friend, it is not so: if they should see me daylie, they would make no more account of me. It is a maxime, that the Lord of this great Citie must not go thither but once in ten yeares, and when he is there, it behoueth him to temper his actions, as if he were vpon a scaffold readie for to play some Comedie, where grauitie and good grace is necessary for to content the beholders: for the people do easily receiue an euill impression of their Prince, as they also do a good, if you performe it well vnto them. Now

Prince *Axalla* sent into China Prince *Axalla* in his name from *Quinza* into China, & his imperiall Maiestie did not depart out of the Province before he returned: hee went thither with great diligence for to establish peace there, and faithfully for to report vnto the Prince *Odmar* his cariage of himselfe with the king of China, and for to temper all things there. Also for that the Emperour, who loued his seruants, desired to see *Odmar*. This was a thing verie acceptable vnto Prince *Axalla*: for he was greatly honoured in those countries, and he was also verie desirous to shewe by all good offices his affection at his being with Prince *Odmar*. The Emperour hauing a vertue the which is seldom to be found amongst great Princes: for he kept his seruants in great loue and vniou together, giuing them often warning to loue one another,

The admires on and exceeding loue the people of Quinza did did bear vnto their Emperor.

The nature of the people of Quinza towards their Emperor.

Prince Axalla sent into China for to establish a peace there.

A great vertue in Princes.

other, to beare good will each vnto other, and faith and obedience vnto him, two flowers which raised him vp vnto his greatnesse. There was also another occasion, which was, that the Chinois would not by anie meanes sweare obedience vnto *Odmar*, as representing the Emperours person, by reason of certaine complaints he made against them. The Emperour who did temper all things with his mildnesse, did honor *Axalla* with this charge and commandement, for to end all these particular matters. *Axalla* found Prince *Odmar* vpon the entrance of the borders, who receiued him with all the magnificence that might be: and hauing honored and feasted him the space of three dayes with all the royltie that might be, after he had imparted vnto him the affaires of the Emperour his Lord and master, he set forward towards him with all diligence, and Prince *Axalla* went forward towards *Paguin*, where he was receiued of the Gouernour with all possible honor. And hauing assembed all the Emperours forces, hee set forward towards the borders of China, to haue an enteruiew at *Pochio*, where the meeting place was agreed vpō. He passed by *Quantow*: there did he view this strong citie, which he had won against the hope euen of his master, who supposed the same was able to resist him six moneths, he hauing taken it in three: so as euery one for his valour came to reuerence him, honoring & magnifying him, desiring his gouernment, because he was milde, curteous, and of easie access to them that had busynesse with him. To be short, the Emperor who knew with wisdom and readinesse how to order his affaires, could not reforme them but by the changing of *Odmar*, who in truth was feuere and graue: but *Axalla* being milde & curteous, did knit again euery one vnto

the Emperours obedience: so Prince *Axalla* went forward vnto *Pochio*, whither the king came also to meeete with him; & he entred full fiftie leagues into the countrie newlie conquered. It seemed vnto him a thing too much derogating from the greatnessse of the Emperor, the maiestie of whose person hee represented, if hee went any further to see this barbarous king, being more fit that he should come forward into the countrie conquered latelic from him by *Odmar*, after hee had obtainede the victorie, then to go into his countries although he had subiected them vnto the Emperour, & did pay a verie great tribute. So the king of China arriued within a league of *Pochio* with all his Court: hee set forward vnto a plaine, where he and Prince *Axalla* did see each other, who was much better accompani-ed, from whom the king did as much differ as from the Emperors owne person. They met three feuerall times together: the king desired to be admitted into a Citie, which the Emperour had granted vnto him by the trea-tie. Prince *Odmar* declared that it was of great impor-tance, therefore Prince *Axalla* was by the Emperour ap-pointed for to be iudge of this controuersie. In the end they required another further within the countrie, the which the king accepted: so he was put into possession of that city, the situatiō wherof was very pleasant, being compassed about with a lake. *Axalla* hauing discouered that this barbarous king did earnestly desire it only for his pleasure, and not for any other euill intent, the city which hee deliuēred being seated vpon a riuer further within his countrie, and that other within our countrie compassed about with our fortresses: but *Odmar* did not allow of that, and supposed it to be for an euill purpose, as for to contrive some new practises. *Odmar* being an old

The meeting of Prince Axalla with the king of China at Pochio.

olde man, who knew the kings vnfaithfulnes, although he had made him know it well enough vnto his smart, hauing (as I haue said) won twenty or thirtie Cities fro him, and aboue four-score leagues of countrie, at such time as hee obtainede the last battaile, during the time that the Emperour was in his last voyage against the Persians. So the enteruiewe continued yet betweene Prince *Axalla* and the king of China on the plaine, a tent being pitched, whither Prince *Axalla* did come vnto him, whom he continually honoured as much as the Emperours owne person, where after they had long time treated by interpreters, it was in the end agreed that the king of China should enter againe into *Quinanci*, not suffering him to put anie Garrison into it, nor to fortifie the same: but euen as a prisoner & sub-ject vnto the Emperour, he should enioy it, & it should be his owne, inioyng all the reuenuie thereof, neither should he carrie any kingly ensignes, without the ex-presse leauue of the Gouernour for the Emperour: hee should notwithstanding haue a guard of three hun-dred men for his person; and should giue knowledge vnto the said Gouernour of his iourney, before he en-tred into the Emperours countries, the which hee must passe for to go thither. Now the Citie was situated in the middest of a verie great lake, in the which were manie Islands, wherin there were an infinite number of houses of pleasure, and it had bene alwaies a very de-licate place, where the kings of China were wont to re-create theselues in al kinds of pleasures that were there to be found: in so much as this barbarous king did not respect the conditions propounded vnto him, so as he might make his abode there, as it were in an Her-mitage. Hauing left vnto his brother the gouerne-

The resolution of the meeting between Axalla and the king of China.

ment of his whole kingdome, through the displeasure he had of his bondage whereunto he was brought; a courage certainly magnanymous, and worthie a nation made ciuill with the best learning, and vnworthy the name of a Barbarian wherewith wee called him. So Prince *Axalla* hauing visited all the cities newly conquered, and deliuered vp by the king of China, hauing brought all things into a peaceable estate, he sent vnto the Emperour to beseech that it would please him to grant vnto his returne, and also for to understand, if he allowed of all things which he had done. The Emperour who vsed this custome, often to change the Gouerners of his Prouinces, would gladlie haue retained Prince *Odmar* neare vnto his person, and put another into his place, seeing him olde, and also for that he was not liked of the souldiers and people, by meanes of his age and frowardnesse, the which the Emperour perceiuing, did purpose for to bring him neare vnto his person, and for to send in his place the great Chamberlaine, who was young, and would bee more acceptable the he, and more able to sustaine all thinges, as well in respect of the vntemperatenesse of the aire, as also for the paines of warres; determining that if a verie necessary occasion did not happen, to haue him neare his person, for to serue him with counsell, and to ease him in the gouernment of his estate. So *Axalla* was called backe againe, being commaunded to come vnto the Emperour, who was at *Cambalu*, where hee stayed his returne, and to suffer in staying the great Chamberlaine to come thither. The Prince of *Vaugnefu*, who had of long time verie faithfully serued the Emperour, and whose faithfulness was most especiallie acknowledged in all his warres hee had conducted,

*Tamerlan his
custome in pla-
cing gouerners
over his pro-
vinces.*

where-

wherewith both himselfe and a brother of his had serued verie well. Notwithstanding it was not conuenient to leaue him for to command absolutely, as wel for that ofte times honours doe change the affection vpon occasion, as also because the Parthians do verie vnwillinglie obey strangers. The Emperour had also a desire to honouer him with another gouernment, where hee should doe him better seruice then there: for the Emperour had this custome, to make a note of those that were fit to doe him seruice, and hee remembred such, to employ them in the gouernment of his estate, whether it were in peace or warre, without being importuned with demanding, there being no man in his court so bold as to demaund anie estates or honours of him: for money and goods it was permitted, but not for anie other thing, esteeming that they which doe ambitiouslie seeke for gouernments and charges, do it not to vse them well, neither for the Princes or peoples profite. He had also this Maxime, that hee did change them, and they for all that did not thinke themselues any thing disgraced, thinking it verily the destruction of an estate, how flourishing soever it be, to deliuer countries and places vnto Gouerners as heritages: for in the end they vsurpe them as their owne, and the estate how great and mightie soever it be (being knit together) comming to be seuered in peeces, is at the end of his power and authoritie, and becommeth nothing. And alwayes for the most part he did employ them frō a lesse vnto a greater charge of countries: sometimes he called them neare vnto his person, to leade his Armies, the which was the greatest honour within the Empire: and they were obeyed throughout all his countries even as the Emperours owne person. I haue

seen two of them alone, after that four, then seven, as at this present; they are come unto this number even as the Empire increased unto his greatness: none of the other having iurisdiction of all the Empire but they, and vpon whom as on seven pillars, the Princes person doth reli his greatest affaires, of the which they do not speake but in the presence of the Prince, & as he propoundeth the matters, for to haue their aduise therein, whether it be of peace or warre. Now to return vnto the Prince, who was at Cambala, accompanied with *Odmar* and *Axalla*, *Odmar* an olde man persuading the Emperor vnto peace, and *Axalla* who was warlike, an enemie vnto rest, and desirous of glorie, did prouoke him vnto warre. But the Princes borders were stretched out so farre from the Court, that he could not set downe any plot for that matter: so as seeing the countrie of *Qinzay* a countrie of quiet, he iudged this estate to be fit for *Odmar*, who was alreadie olde, and allyed vnto the Emperor, who would bee fitter then hee to gouerne this countrie, as also this reuerent olde age which was in him, would bee verie conuenient for to traine vp the youth of the young Prince, who was brought vp in this place, and that there was none fitter then he: but the means how to set this forward was a thing he durst not vndertake, because he would not be noted to haue any other purpose then that which proceeded from the will of his maister. Now it fell out that after a certaine time the Emperor received newes that the ancient discipline of the Armie did degenerate, in so much that euerie souldier desired the Emperours presence, rebelling often against their heads which were there, for that they had not the accustomed authoritie for to supprese

preſſe them. Nowe this Armie was the life of the estate, the terror of the whole world, and that which maintained in obedience ſo many countries conqueſted with the ſword. The Emperor being aduertised hereof by the Captaines, was troubled: for to go thither in person, alwayes to remaine there, his pleasure and rest which he promised vnto himſelf did withholde him, ſo as hauing ſecrely ſent for *Odmar* and *Axalla* about theſe affaires, and to know whether it were neceſſarie he ſhould go thither: *Axalla* preſentlie perſuaded him vnto this voyage, and to leaue *Odmar* there in his countries where hee was, whose wiſdome would prouide for all. But the Prince who did alreadie perceiue the ſweetneſſe that was in Cities, in comparison of the wilde life in Armies; as heretofore he had taken delight therein, ſo at this preſent apprehending this maner of liuing, hee determined to preſerue his estate by his Lieutenants, and himſelfe to rest, and enjoy the fruits of his traualle, being alreadie of the age ofiftie yeares, hee thought before hee died to take his rest, and to content himſelfe with the remembrance and contemplation of ſo many happy victories and worlike deedes, and to preſerue in full peace his conqueſtes without enterpriſing or attempting any thing but in his owne deſfence: ſo as he turned himſelfe towards Prince *Axalla*, and ſayd vnto him, that ſurely hee would maintaine *Odmar* in quiet as long as hee could; and ſurelie hee ſhould haue bene vngratefull vnto his ſervices, if hee had not prouided for him a quiet life: that his opinion did greatly content him, for to giue vnto him this gouernement, that hee might end his dayes in thoſe quiet and peaceable countries, in continuing

with honour the faithfullnesse of his seruice. That his own person wold make his abode at *Sachetay*, to be the nearer vnto the occasions his Armie might haue of his presence in *Persia*, where he wold leue the same, and would increase it with the number of thirtie thousand horse: but his pleasure was that hee should go and command ouer it, for that he knew him the only person in his Empire which could perorme that seruice, ha-
ving tried the affection that the souldiers did beare vnto him, together with the care hee alwayes had for the obseruation of militarie discipline: that hee trusted him with all his estate, trusting him with his Armie, whereupon onely depended the keeping of so manie great prouinces, and the terror vnto so many nations, differing both in language and manners, ouer whom he commanded, and of whom he was the conquerour; that he only shold haue an eie vnto all that shold be necessarie for the maintenance of his Armie; and that the first foundation of his reuuenues & the best shold be appointed therunto, as well for the recompence of his souldiers, as for the ordinarie paymentes; that hee wold haue them to be kept in the ancient discipline of the Parthians, the which is, to lodge in the open fieldes, and to keepe within the Campe, and from three moneths vnto three moneths to dislodge, buying all, and paying for all; that he had alwayes bene brought vp within his Armie, for to consider the valour and deserts of euerie one; that hee had governed them; that the Capaines and souldiers shold bee recompensed as hee shold appoint according to their deserts; that Persia was the place where hee wold keepe his Armie, for that their mindes are more stirring and impatient in bondage. Also that the bor-
ders

The discipline
of the Parthi-
ans.

ders of Siria, were neare for to helpe the same vpon occasions offered, if there were any neede. And turning himselfe vnto Prince *Odmar*, he said, he wold commit two parts of his estate vnto him, the bottome of his riches, and his most pretious treasure his sonne; that all things were in great quietnesse where hee wold haue him for to governe, that he should be there honored in all peace, an estate fit for his old age, and for the recompence of his seruices. Calling (after that) his Chancellour vnto him, who was not at this discourse, he com-
maunded him to dispatch out Comissions, the one for *Odmar* in the authoritie and government of all the estate of *Quinzel* and *Cambula*, ouer vnto the sea, and vnto the mountaines, being the borders of China. And *Axalla* the gouernement of Lieutenant generall ouer his armie, and the authoritie and commandement in all the Prouinces, through the which the same did march, even as the Emperours owne person. This authoritie being spread touching p[er]t[er] for his government ouer the armie, and come vnto the camp, there was never secur to much ioy amongst the Capaines and souldiers, euery one of them remembred the particu-
lat affection that hee haue to him, & his deserts towards every man. Better newes could not be brought vnto *Odmar*, who was made by him, & aduanced by his hand. *Odmar* was left at *Cambula* to make preparation for his iorrey vnto *Quinzel*, very well satisfied with the choise the Emperour had made of him; and the Emperour ha-
ving caused him to be instructed in his affaires, and par-
ticularly of his Prouinces, he himselfe did comand him that as sonne as his sonne shold be tenne yeares old, he shold be brought vp in the affaires, and that all shold be imparted vnto him, to the end he might learne

Comissions
dispatched by
the Chanceller
vnto *Odmar*
and *Axalla*
for their go-
vernements.

betimes to serue the common wealth, not willing to trouble his head before that age, but for to suffer him to play with those of his owne yeares. *Kam* *taid* *iehien* was the name of this young Prince, the whiche is as much as to say in the Parthian tongue, as, The houle of men; he had received his name of the Emperour his uncle in the absence of his father, and in trueth, this name was verie conuenient for him: for manie men did loue him, and principally the Prince where in he was borne, the Emperour not beeing able to carrie him with himselfe vnto *Samarcand*, where the Empresse was, and it seemed vnto the people of *Quin-zai*, that they were utterly vndone, if they shold loose his presence, and if he shold gote out of their citie. In the end they so earnestly besought his Majestie, that he graunted them the bringing of him vp in his youth amongst them. So the Emperour went vnto *Samarcand*, hauing taken such order as was conuenient throughout all his Empire: he determineth to make his ordinary abode there, and to make this citie (the place of his birth) worthie to be the seate of his successors, so faire would he make it, large, and beautified with all manner of faire buildings. Deuotion did also draw him vnto solitariesse, whereunto his nature inclined as much as was possible. Wheres had it not bene for a certaine desire of glory he had, which forced his nature of long time, he had plaied this part. It is also a great wisedome to knowe how to command his inclination, and also to be able to content himselfe with glorie, and to suppress his ambition, and enjoying it, to begin in good time to giue vnto himselfe a happie end, if it be possible, and that this is the will of fortune the enemy vnto mans quiet: for oftentimes that which

men

men purpose, God the chiefe gouernour of all things doth frame it after another manner: but the happie of the Emperour, the whiche I do attribute vnto the honor and reuerence he did beare vnto the Dethoule, with the cause the same had care of him, and fauoured his purposes. Now returning backe againe vnto Prince *Axalla*, who after he had receiued this commaundement, was nothing sluggish: so as he gathered together from all partes the old souldiers which had bene discharged, it seeming vnto him they had enjoyed sufficient rest: he sent also on the other side vnto the Moscouite, to draw from thence souldiers on horsebacke for his guard, trustring greatly in their valour and courage; and all the way he entertayned the Emperour about the order it would please him shold be obseru'd in his armie. *Axalla* propounded vnto him that which was conuenient to be done: the Emperour then did either adde thereunto or take away as it seemed good vnto him for in the arte of warre he had so great knowledge and experiance, that no man was equall vnto him. Prince *Axalla* was the next vnto him in this vertue for the faithfull & wittie executing of his commaundements. The Emperour going by small iourneyes, by reason of the Court which was great, and the traine of his cartes, the which were in great numbers, which did greatly vexe Prince *Axalla*: for his dispatch was referred vnto the coming to *Samarcand*, the Emperour continuing sometimes where he found good hunting: he greatly loued these honest exercises, the whiche kept him (as he said) in breath, that he should not finde the paines of armes straunge vnto him: but *Axalla* drew forward the Emperour as much as he could vnto *Samarcand*, where he arrived at the end of Sommer, where he found the

Tamerlan the
most excellent
man in the arte
of warre.

Tamerlan lo-
ued hunting
but as a good
exercise.

Emprise, who had a verie faire sonne ready for circu-
sion, for the which were made an infinite number of
magnificences. In the meane time *Axalla* dispatched
his affaires, and the estate of his armie: for the Emper-
our had in the middest of his greatest pleasures, cer-
taine houres for the affaires of his estate, the which he
neuer omitted. All matters thus dispatched, Prince *Ax-
alla* hauing taken his leaue of the Imperiall Maiestie,
he set forward, & had with him some twentie thousand
horse, all the flourishing youth of the Court accompan-
ying him. The Emperor desiring they should be trayned
vp in the paines of wars, rather then in the delicacies of
a Court: for the Prince did aduance vnto charges, those
which were in his armie, and not such as remained in
his Court, except they were by his expresse comman-
dement neare about his owne person. The Emperour
whilst these matters passed thus, received newes from
the Prince of *Thadis*, appointed Gouvernor ouer Syria
and Egypt, who sent him word, that all things in those
parts were very quiet, a thing which brought great con-
tentment vnto the Prince, who had his minde wholly
bent vnto peace, busying himselfe in building of his ci-
tie of *Samarcand*, and in decking of a sumptuous Tem-
ple, the which he had built; wherein he meant to make
his Tombe, and for his successors, the which he caused
to be named the Temple of *Salomon*. And there did lie
hang vp all the Trophes which he had conquered from
his enemies: he caused also therein to be grauen all the
battels he had fought, together with the diversitie of
Nations he had overcome, and the countries hee had
conquered. To the end he might (he said) shew vnto his
great God, how greatly he did acknowledge his bene-
fits & goodnesse. And because he had many Christians

Tamerlā built a Temple at Samarcand, and called it the Temple of Salomon.

*Tamerlā his zealous gra-
tulnesse to-
wards God.*

of

of all kindes of artes and occupations, whom he had
brought from all partes where they had giuen them
vnto him: his pleasure was they should haue a Temple
built for to pray in the same, the which hee called the
Temple of Iesus. This had *Axalla* obtained of the Prince,
who liued according vnto this law, and many others al-
so, of whom our armie was compounded, the Emperor
seruing himselfe with them indifferently, hauing suffe-
red thoroughout all his kingdomes the honour and tre-
uerence of Jesus Christ, euен within the armie it selfe,
and the sacrifices of the Christians were offered, the
Christians being his best souldiers, and the chiefest in
his Court: so had he also many countries vnder his obe-
dience the which were all wholly Christians, whose ser-
uice he vsed in his warres, who would not be forced nor
helde for other then such as were of his religion, in as
much as they worshipped one onely God, and not al-
lowing (no more then he) the pluralitic of Gods, the
which aboue all other things he had in detestation and
horror, driving away and destroying the Idolaters, de-
claring them slaves in all the countries of his obe-
dience. And as this Emperor was religious, he woulde of-
ten heare holy men, as well of his owne religion, as of
the Christians, whose austertie he wondred at, being
without ostentation as that of *Guines* was, and of others
fayning holinesse for to get honour and praise amongst
the people: but he did see one thing throughout all E-
gypt, whereat he greatly wondered, religious people
who liued with dried things, refusing all moist things,
which were in the deserts for the name of Iesus Christ,
whom they account God, depriving themselves of all
delights for to follow his crosse & passion, things wor-
thy admiration. He heard also recited the persecutions

of the Romaine Emperours against the Christians: this same caused in the Emperour (who was naturally religious) a respect towards them which were of this religion, recommending himselfe vnto their prayers, and putting as much trust in them as in his other subiects, maintaining them in the libertie and exercise of their conscience, as if they had beene his owne naturall subiects. And we must cōmend in the Emperour two actions, the which were without intermission exercised by him, that is to say, godlinesse & iustice: for three times in the weeke at *Samarcand* he ministred open iustice vnto the meanest, in his Imperiall Maiestie, a thing which made him beloued of the people ouer whom he cōmāded. In the other dayes he gaue secret audience for the affaires of his estate, & tooke aduice for matters of importance, which were decided daily in his presence. He had such seuerity in his counsell, that they must needs deale truly before him, & without all passion in discoursing. Notwithstanding he alwaies shewed himselfe courteous in his cōuersation, & made himselfe both beloued & feared of his people: he nevere changed his seruāts except they cōmited great falts against him: of all the seruants of the late Emperor his vnkle he did not change one of them, but he did withall encrease their estates, making the in this change to feele his liberality, which he made strangers for to tast also, vnto whom he was accustomed to giue, to binde the vnto him. He drew great store of mooneyarely for tribute of the Moscouite: but he distributed it within the same countrey for to maintaine his authoritie there, winning those for his which might haue hurt him, by meanes of giuing vnto the. He had great care of his reuenues, and he had such a readinesse, that he did see his estate frō three monethes vnto

Tamerlan his
great liberality

Tamerlan his
care of his re-
venues.

The godlinesse
and iustice of
Tamerlan.

three monethes within one houre, both the ordinarie and extraordinarie expences, they presented it so well digested vnto him. His reuenue was not certaine, for he augmented or increased it according vnto his owne good pleasure, and one certaine day in the yeare he increased or diminished the same. His great Treasurier was very familiar with him, as one who made him continually an account of his doings, and also for to receive at euery houre his commandements: the great Treasurer paied the estates of all the Princes and great officers with his owne handes, and all the reuenues by himselfe or by deputies for whom he was answerable, being administered generally in all the Prouinces by him for to distribute them according to the Princes will. These estates were verie daungerous: I haue seene two of them punished with death most cruelly, being found to abuse their offices. After the death of the old Emperour, all money was reduced vnder the image and armes of the Prince, and all other forbidden. During the time that the Emperour did remaine at *Samarcand*, he did greatly reforme the estate of his reuenues, & euerie one made account that he would make a great foundation therein, and they knew not wherefore he made so great a heape thereof; he was accounted to be very liberall, which is a point of no small commendation in the great; the same was verie ordinarie, and as it were borne with him, being wont to say, that on the day he had not giuen something, that hee had done nothing in all that day: saying, that giuing doth commende men, making them like vnto God. Often glorying that neuer anie had refused that which hee offered vnto them. Nowe let vs retorne againe vnto *Axella*, who as soone as he was come vnto the armie,

Seuere pun-
ishment against
deceitful trea-
surers.

Tamerlan re-
sponsible.

caused the old laws to be published, the which the Emperor did obserue when he did first begin his wars, the which had beeне cancelled, and left in all the orders of warfare, many strange fashions being mingled therein, which did cause the decay of the militarie discipline. Prince *Axalla* assembled the Captaines of the armie, declaring vnto them, the disorders which were amongst their companies, for the which he did not blame them, but the heads which had commaunded them these two or three yeares: but hee desired them, together with himselfe to take the paines for to reduce all things into the first forme of the Parthian discipline; that he would not giue vnto them any new thing, but he was only desirous indee for to cause the aurient discipline to be obserued. The which was, first to encampe euery where; to entrench the campe, commanding that the souldier who was become daintie in the garrisons, should accustome himselfe againe from hence forward vnto the paines of the field, strengthening himselfe by trauellung with those which were appointed onely for the fortifying of the campe, the number of whom was alwayes fiue and twentie thousand in the Imperiall Armie, That he would haue the first number wherein therē was anie commandement amongst the footmen, should be ten, next an hundred, then a thousand, and afterwards ten thousand, ouer whom one should commaund alone vnderneath the Colonell generall: amongst the horsemen an hundred, next a thousand, then ten thousand, and after that the generall of the armie should commaund ouer all. He caused particular viewes to be made, for to settle this order. He had threescore thousand footmen within his armie, ouer whom commaunded sixe Colonels vnder the Colonell generall, there were 40000. horse

The Parthian discipline.

The order of Tamerlan his standing campe.

horse vnder foure heads, whereof there were ten thousand light horsemen. He had his particular gards beside these, which did amount vnto 2000 horse, and 4000 footmen, these encamped about the generals person. Behold the estate which the Emperour commaunded to be obserued within the Army, the which onely they called Imperiall, the others not hauing that name: for there is in *Siria* an army of thre-score thousand men, twenty thousand horsemen, and forty thousand footmen, as many in *China*: as many towards *Cambalu*: as many towards *Moscouie*: as many towards *Cherroneze*, but not in the field, except then when neede required. But this army thus ordered was a sound body, the which was fit to strengthen the other bodies of his armies (the which were weake and ill ordered) vpon the first need. Prince *Axalla* trauelled also to search out the inuention which the Christians had, and this caused he to be performed by meanes of the *Iewes*, who did traficke into all partes: and he spared no cost for to get all sorts of inuentions and engines, the which might serue in the art militarie, wherein was all his study, for to excell in the same. So as he obtained the inuention of artillerie, the which was new amongst the Christians, and it was brought vnto him by a Greeke, who had serued him euer since the death of Prince *Andronicus*. The same did greatly astonish euery one, to behold the violence of the powder: that caused them also to study the more thereon, for to get the full perfection thereof, wherein the Emperour did spend greatly, in causing some of them to be made, after he had gotten people which had skill to make them, as also for to get some of them already made. For we had alwayes indee this inuention, to thrust forward a bullet by a violent motion,

The inuention of Artillery amongst the Christians.

but with this powder it was a thing wonderfull, and of great astonishment. The Emperour would haue the prayse of this inuention to be giuen vnto Prince *Axalla*, the which he caused to be written within the historie of his raigne for an eternall memory, amongst the seruices he had done him for the increase of his Empire, euen as also he had acknowledged them in earnest, hauing giuen vnto him more then a million of reuenues, besides his ordinarie pensions, the which did amount vnto as much. *Odmar* had not much lesse, and also the Prince of *Thanais* had a great estate. I haue left vnspeaken of an infinite number of other acknowledgements of seruices, the which he bestowed vpō them that serued him well: for the meanest souldier might hope for the greatest honours of the Empire: for the first notable seruice of the soldier was remembred, for to encourage him to do the better, so as the reward for the good, and punishment for the wicked, were distributed according vnto their deserte. That same held this great Empire linked together, in such sort, as it could not disseuer what onset souuer he had, how great souuer the same were; so as by that order, as soone as any warre was begun, it was as soone ended. And for his new conquests, they did order the same so well for him, that reuoltes did seldome happen in the same; and if any did chance, they were well punished, and but of small waight. Thus our estate was in his force, & at his period, & very hardly could be greater. Our Prince waxed old, & became heauy, his sonnes grew to be great, & me began to worship the sonne rising. But the Emperour did beare such loue vnto them, that there was nothing did vexe him, nor any iealousie, but the feare he had that after his death they should not haue so much valor & wis-
done,

dom, as to preserue his estate together, fearing diuisiōs, often lamēting that he had not a third son for to agree them both whē as they should be at strife, as it is a thing which doth often happen; and he was therein a Prophet: for this great Mouarchie through deuision of the brethren was ouerthrown and dispersed after his death, as we shall see in their historie. Now to returne vnto the affaires that passed there, Prince *Axalla*, who was desirous to be doing, being returned from *Babilon*, whither hee went vpon some reuolt, gaue the Emperour to vnderstand that the *Ottamans* hauing knowledge of the death of the Emperour *Baizet* within the prison at *Samarcand*, had chosen his second sonne called *Calepin*, and that they gathered together, a great Armie for to conquer all *Natolia* againe. And that the Emperour who was troubled much with the inward warre against his bretheren in Greece, harkened not after the affaires of *Asia*. That this was of great importance for his greatnessse. That euen within *Perſia* *Democres* had gathered forces together, and came towards him. That he thought good to giue his Maiestie vnderstanding of these newes, to the ende it would please him to aduise himselfe therein; that he was most ready to receiue his commandements, and that he would set forward after hee had receiued the same; that he did assure him, his army was wel disposēd to do him seruice; that it was much better to go & meeke the, & to fortifie his borders, the for to stay for the warres in *Perſia*, where their miids were not as yet sufficiently confirmed in his friendship; that *Lichibanes* who was gouernour in *Natolia*, had retired his forces vpō this rumour out of *Bursia*, the which he had vnmāteled and destroyed, not hauing sufficiēt forces for to keepe it, and had retired theselues

Consultation.

Resolution.

vnto the mountaines looking for the forces he hoped to receiue from his Maiesy, seeing there was no city of importance in the champion country. These newes being come vnto the Emperour, he assembled together his counsell, where these affaires were consulde of, whereupon it was in the end resolued, that Prince *Axalla* shold set forward with the Imperiall Army directly towards *Natolia* for to ioyne with *Lichibanes*; that the Emperor shold send *Odmar* with the forces of *Quinzai* and *Cambalu* towardes the frontiers of the *Mosconite*, *Zerifanes* with twentie thousand horse, the which shold be sent vnto the *Mosconite* and his allies, for to require of him the forces he oweþ vnto the Emperour by his submissiōn, the which was ten thousand horse; that the Prince of *Thanais* shold also set forward with as many as hee could raise, with his horsinen; vnto the gouernour of *Babilon* also to raise euen to the number of twentie thousand horse, and fiftie thousand footmen; a commandement into *Persia* to leauie men euery where. And to this ende there was a commandement sent from the Emperour vnto all the Cities of his kingdomes, and Commissioners wer appointed for to make choise of the me, some for wars, the other for the works. Victuals were commanded in all the Emperours countries for setting forward of the Armie. The great gouernour of *Parthia* *Zamai* was dispatched vnto *Deristan*, to be there for to receiue all the troupes, and commandement was giuen vnto the Comissioners for victuals and munitions to conuey them thither. It was published ouer all that the Emperour went thither in proper person, for to punish once againe this proude race of the *Ottomans*. In the meane time *Axalla* marched directly towardes the borders, and he went like a ball of snow, his Armie always

alwayes increasing, being glad of so good occasion. The Emperour hauing sent vnto him his resolution, with a commandement also to take and leaue all that shold be necessarie for the maintenance of his Army, in all the places of the Emperours reuuenues. *Axalla* marched with diligence, being desirous to come vnto the borders, and to ioyne with the forces that stayed for him, for to fight with and expulse the enemy, before the Emperour shold come vnto him, whereof he had an expresse commandement, the Emperour for this occasion marching slowly, in such maner as he greatly desired to execute the same by Prince *Axalla*, this iourney being troublesome vnto him, by reason of his indisposition. Where to the end nothing shold be wanting vnto him, he sent a commandement vnto the Prince of *Thanais* to go and meete with Prince *Axalla*, as soone as he had settled his gouernment. He caused also two or three thousand horse to go one after another, who came vnto him with diligence. Passing also by *Tauris*, he drew from thence fife thousand horsemen, and ten thousand footmen of ordinary garrison, ouer whom commanded a Lord called *Aliren*, greatly affectioned vnto the Emperors seruice, and principality of Prince *Axalla*. Arriving also in *Armenia* hee drew out of the garrisons as many as amounted vnto twenty thousand horse, so as his army was very neare 80000 horsemen, and 160000 footme: the Emperour making account to be accōpanied also with as many forces from *Parthia*, as also from the *Mosconite*. Now the Emperour could not come before it was neare sixe moneths and slowly as I haue sayd marched his owne person, not being wel at ease, hauing complained these 3. moneths of a paine in his reines, in so much as some doubted greatly lest this sicknesse wold

Tamerlan
waxed sickly.

bring some other accident; for he decayed greatly, and did eat nothing, notwithstanding this was only knownen amongst his familiars, who greatly feared the inconuenience that happened. Notwithstanding some report, that an Astrologian did say, that he should giue a battell vnto all the East, and that he should be victorious; another did aduertise him, to take heed of the third day of the Moone, of the ninth moneth of the yeare wherein he now was; so as the Emperour did think he should dye in some battell and not in his bed. For he often sayd amongst his men, that he did acknowledge him selfe to be mortall, and that he was subiect vnto the law of nature; that he did often thinke of paying his tribute. Now he looked for *Odmar*, who should bring the Prince his eldest sonne vnto him, prouiding wisely for his affaires before he would march any further, faining to be desirous to carrie him with him, and to teach him to know his subiectes, and the meanes to serue him selfe with them if any ill fortune happened vnto him. But I beleue the Emperour was desirous for to see him before he departed, determining to leaue him at *Samarca*nd with *Odmar* and the Empresse his mother; & what soeuer his destinie appointed for him, he determined to passe ouer *Bosphorus* vnto *Constantinople*, and enter into *Greece* to roote out for euer the Empire of the *Ottomans*; and that he must once againe do this violence for to assure his estate, and settle the foundation of his glory. Now during the time that the Emperour stayed the comming of the Prince his sonne, who by reason of his young age came slowly with Prince *Odmar*, Prince *Axalla* whose desire of reputation and glory did waken him an hundred times in a night, went in great diligēce, and so well, that he came vnto *Turcomanie*, where the

Astrologians.

Tamerlan in
second iourney
against the
Ottomans.

Georgian

Georgian troupes which the Emperour did there intertaine came vnto him, and he drew out of them full fifteene thousand men, very gallant and well trained in the warres. At the length he arriued at *Garga*, whither the Gouernour of the Prouince did come vnto him for to receiue the Emperours commandements. Being come thither, he would not enterprise any thing before the Prince of *Thanais* were come, who made great hast; he brought but 15000.horse & 30000. footmen with him. As soone as he was come, he made him partaker of the Emperors cōmandemēts, & imparted vnto him the honor of leading the auātguard of the Imperiall armie, and vnto the gouernour of the countrey the arier-guard: for he was a man of great authoritie, and had bin long time honored of the Emperour; the end of his gouernement was limited on the one side with *Persia*, and on the other with *Syria*. Now the most part of the countreis which the Emperour had cōquered in *Natolia*, he had deliuered them vnto the obedience of the *Grecian* Prince, who should pay a certaine yearlye tribute for the same vnto the Emperour, the which amounted vnto foure hundred thousand ducats of gold, and eight hundred thousand frankes of siluer. *Axalla* sent vnto the Emperor of *Greece* to giue him vnderstāding that he was come vnto *Garga*, in the which place he gathered together his forces, and that the Emperour his Lord had sent him to prepare his arnay there, and that his owne person did march thither in his old age, for to performe the same good office vnto him the which he had done vnto the late Emperour his father; that he desired him to pacifie the inward quarrels, for to remedie the euils abroad, the which increased; and that he would in the end put his estate into the same or greater daunger then it had bin, if he did not

Tribute payed
by the Emper-
our of Greece
vnto Tamerla
for the most
part of Natol-
lia.

Discord be-
tweene the bre-
thren for the
Empire of
Greece, being
divided a-
mongst them.

think vpon quenching the ciuill and particular discordes, for to take care for publike matters. All this could preuaile nothing with these Princes, who had made diuision of the Empire, and were at debate every one about his portion: but they considered not, that by this diuision they did build a portion for a third, the which was greatly for his aduantage, if they did not remedy the same, whereunto hee perswaded them. At such time as the Embassador came, who was a very wise man, they thought Prince *Axalla* had only certaine troupes of ten of twelue thousand horse: but as soone as they vnderstood of the great army he had, they entred into suspition, that the same might be as well against them as *Calepin*, although he assured them of all maner of good will of the Emperors part, insomuch as presently it was negotiated to treat some argreement between the brethren, at the least a truce, but peruailed nothing: for they would not trust their elder brother. Vpon the Embassadors returne, we learned where *Calepin* was and his army, and of what quantity it was. After he had made a generall review, and caused a muster to be had of all the souldiers, hee marched directly towards the enemie who was in *Caramenia*. *Calepin* was greatly astonished to see the diligence this Armie had made, the which he had caused to be viewed by his spies; hee did thinke it had bene but of ten or twelue thousand men onely: but when he knew how great an Armie it was, he entred into a great feare, insomuch as hauing committed the whole charge of his Army vnto a *Baſe*, he retired towards the sea; hee remaining onely of the stocke of the *Ottomans*, they thought it not good hee should hazard his person vnto the euent of the battell, although his Armie were great. But the *Persians* and the

the *Mamelues* had the principall forces, which made him doubt least any disgrace happening vnto him, they should make their agreement vnto his damage, the which was not ill aduised. He had also intelligence from *Persia* that the Emperour marched forward, for to assist his forces with another great Armie, insomuch as hee repented that he had stirred the sleeping dogge. The *Greeke* on the other side entred into a great suspition, of the great preperation the which was made in euery place, not thinking that it was onely for *Calepin*: but in respect of his estate hee began to seeke the meanes The Greeke
Emperour did
seeke aide of
the Turke his
mortall enemy,
against Ta-
merlan his ap-
proched friend. to assure the same, and also to demaund succour of *Calepin*, affirming that the plot of this warre was begun against them both, and that the Emperour would not content himselfe to haue the *Tegean* sea for his borders, but would certainly (if he could) stretch foorth his conquestes beyond *Constantinople*; that he did perceiue it was necessary for him to the assuring of his estate, to ioyne themselues together; that hee had especially heretofore very little fauoured the gouernour the which the Emperour had left, after the death of the *Greeke* Emperour his father. Also hee had not desired the *Parthian* Emperour to vndertake this voyage, and much lesse had made anie countenance to fauour him, for feare of breaking with *Calepin*, with whom hee had made a certaine agreement, so faint hearted was hee. All these matters put him in a great doubt, and made him to thinke vpon ioyning himselfe with *Calepin* in good earnest, for to resist our forces if hee might. All these cogitations were good, but it was very late to aduise thereof now, matters being very doubtfull in respect of *Calepin*, who was of the same mind, if he had had the leasure: but all remained now vpon the hazard

of a battell, the which he was constrained to aduenture, seeing that delay did bring more hurt then profit. Also the forces which he did hazard, were most of them *Persians* and *Mamelues*, banished men and fugitiues, who had taken the contrary part against the Emperour. I hold opinion that the *Bassa* had fifteen thousand *Persian* horse-men verie good, and thirtie thousand footmen, commanded by the Prince of *Tauris* a fugitiue: the *Mamelues* were in number twentie thousand horse, commanded by a *Soldan* whom they had chosen, and it is fife yeares since he hath made war in *Arabia*, from whence he was driuen: in the ende, he had bin entised by *Calepin*, & had entred into this league vpon hope that if his affaires had good successe, he would giue him aide for the recouering of *Syria* and *Egypt*, & of the principality of the *Mamelues*. The *Bassa* had fife and twentie thousand horse, & thirty thousand footmen, *Calepin* hauing brought sixe thousand of them with him for his guard, so as the *Bassa* who was a great Captaine, did assure himselfe to ouercome our men, who he sayd were compounded of people nothing affected vnto the *Parthian* name (but he was greatly deceiued.) This same was the *Bassa* who was taken the day before the battell, wherein *Baizet* was taken, vnto whom the Emperour did giue a horse: he sayd that he was assured that he knew our maner of fight, and had noted well the fault *Baizet* had committed in the battell the which he had lost, the which did bring them more hurt by reason of the sayd Emperours presence, being a Captiue, then for any other losse, the same hauing bene much more bloudie on our side: and he sayd true. And this was the occasion wherefore he would not haue *Calepin* commit *Baizet* his fault; behold the reasons of the *Ottomans*. Prince *Axalla* as I haue sayd, had

The Turke &
the Soldan ioy-
ned together a-
gainst Tamer-
lan.

Calepin his for-
ces.

had made a generall muster, hee had found to be in the Imperiall Armie an hundred thousand footmen, and foure-score thousand horsemen, there were of them threescore thousand most braue and resolute men, of the Princes trayned men and all of them old souldiers, there were foure score thousand very good men who where commanded by *Sinopes*, desirous of honour and glory. As soone as the enemy had turned his face towards vs, and that Prince *Axalla* had asked the aduise of the Princes and Captaines of the Army, he marched straight towards him vnto *Goualache*, the which was yet thirtie leagues from vs; who matched in small iourneys, neuer going farre from the sea side, in respect of victuals, whereof they receiued with ease good quantitie, so as all thinges abounded within their Army, but we had some want thereof. Now in the end Prince *Axalla* commanied a *Parthian* Captaine called *Stucan*, who did leade the light horsemen of the Army, to haue an eye that the enemies did not surprise the Army, and that we should not faile but haue word thereof, as soone as they drue neare vnto vs. Now he was a very wittie and vigilant Captaine and a man of enterprise, in so much as hauing a souldier of the countrie with him vnto the place where their Armie was lodged, knowing the language, hee thought with himselfe that in an Armie of sundrie nations he might intermingle himselfe as it did march, and performe some braue peece of seruice: the which he hauing imparted vnto Prince *Axalla*, hee allowed well of the enterprise, and thought that it might bee performed. So *Stucan* aduaunced forward with three thousand horse within ten leagues of the Armie, and arriued at *Regdin*, where hee found a part of the *Ottomans* Armie aduaunced,

and hauing gotten vnderstanding by some prisoners, that the enemies marched towards the forefront of the Army, hauing viewed their Campe, he determined to enter into the same by the meanes of this souldier, who vnderstood the language, fayning that hee came from some seruice, whither he had bene sent for to be a guide vnto two thousand *Persian* horse, who returned from thence, and that at this very time he would mingle himselfe and surprise them vnawares, the which fell out: for hauing aduanced two hundred horse with these souldiers, they mingled themselues within the

A stratageme.

*The worthy
exploit perfor-
men by Stucan*

*with thre
thousand light
horse in the*

*Turkes Campe,
in the night.*

army, and being followed by *Stucan*, he made himselfe maister of that which was the safegard of the army, the which were their lighthersemen, and there were slaine of them more then three thousand men of those which were aduanced forward: the rest of the army being on horsebacke, did not pursue our men in their retraite, thinking it had bene our whole army, the which caused them to hold the bridle with their footmen, chusing rather to loose their stradiots then the substance of the army. In the morning they were greatly astonished whē they vnderstood our Army was as yet ten leagues off, and that they were but three thousand horse, the which had put so great disorder in the campe. The *Bassa* was determined to stay for our army, and if it were possible to weary the same before he came vnto the battell, being aduertised that we had not victuals at our owne pleasure. Prince *Axalla* being come within fife leagues of the enemies army, he intrenched his army, and made a shew of abiding there. Now he was very desirous to view the situation of the enemies Campe, and hauing one day aduanced all his Army in a playne within two leagues of the enemies Army, he would

set

set forward for to view their countenance, and the place where they were encamped: the which he hauing done, he perceiued the way by which their victuals did come vnto them, and raysing the Campe, he determined either to compell them for to fight, or else to lodge betweene them and the sea, for to cut off the way of their victuals: for he was well aduertised of the enemies purposes: and being vncamped, he marched in battell array directly towarde the enemy, as if he meant to haue assaulted him within his trenches. In the meane time he caused his Army to be lodged within a league of him. Now the *Bassa* who had not stirred out of his Campe, knew not what was our purpose, our army hauing bene in battell array, within the view of their Campe aboue eight houres, in the meane time our souldiers lodged. The enemy who did not thinke any such matter, was greatly astonished, when some of his men came and declared vnto him that we were lodged so neare vnto him, and did hinder their victuals, and hauing assembled the chiefe Capraine of his Army, to haue their aduise, hee determined to come vnto the fight, and giue a battell, if he did perceiue that our purpose was to hinder him from the sea, he would yet indeuor as much as he could to procure that his victuals might come, making triall by scoutes to do the same. So the day being come, the *Bassa* caused sixe thousand horse to issue out for to discouer our purposes, giuing commandement vnto the whō he sent to hazard nothing, but to retire if they did see that any did stop the passage: so as it falling out that the Capraine of our side, the which had this charge, was this day on horseback, with x. thousand horse, who vpon the first alarum of his enemie, did beat them brauely into their Campe, the which the

Bassa perciuing, and that it was the purpose of our men, he supposed hee could no longer shun the battell. And the same night he began to approach vnto the point of their campe neare vnto a mountaine, the which was nearer vnto them then vs, to lodge there in parcels, and also to the ende we should not lodge there at all, the which they did foresee might greatly preuidice them if we should win the same before them. So in the morning Prince *Axalla* had certaine newes that the enemies Army did dislodge, the which he desiring to desrie, mounted on horsebacke, and aduanced forward with some twentie thousand horse for to behold their dislodging, determining to set vpon them if hee saw cause, and followed them to take an occasion to do it vpon their lodging. But it fell out otherwise: for seeing their countenance, hee supposed presently what they would do, and hauing called vnto him the Prince of *Thanais* and *Sinopes*, hee sayd vnto them, that he thought it not conuenient to suffer the enemie for to intrench vpon this mountaine, for the discommodities we should receiue thereby. For this cause hee commauded *Sinopes* to set vpon them with twentie thousand men, and to hinder them from this mountaine, assuring himselfe that if he did win it, hee should haue the victorie of the battell most assured. Now the place was such, as the horsemen could by no meanes do anie seruice there, by reason of a marrish that was at the foot of the same mountaine, the which did stretch a good league, but the footmen did easily march thither. Prince *Axalla* assured himselfe hee had good footmen, and that *Sinopes* who was desirous of honor, would not omit to giue a strong assault vpon the enemie vpon this occasion. So our army being wholly ranged

ranged in battell arraie, Prince *Axalla* caused all his footmen to aduance forward: hee determined to fight on foot if the enemies did wilfully attempt the same mountaine, and hauing comanded the Prince of *Thanais* to keepe himselfe at the head of all the horsemen who were in battell array, he aduanced forward, for to succor *Sinopes* in good time, who aduanced lustily with twenty thousand men only. Prince *Axalla* hauing aduised with himselfe, as the best, to cause them to march along by a little hill, and that by this way they shold do their endeuors by surprising of the enemy, who could not perceiue them: so as they shold as soone feele their blowes and assault, as see their persons; this being a *Maxime* that an enemy throughly viewed is halfe con-
Maxime. quered: this was the cause that the same became so great an astonishmēt vnto the enemy, to see himself assaulted not knowing whether it were with all the footmen, or part of the same. The enemies Army was at the other end of the marrish, & we were within the view the one of the other: but euen as our men did giue this onset, you might haue seene their whole army stir, for to resist the strong force of our men, the which continued a good houre. The *Bassa* who was a discreet Captaine, comanded all the footmen he had to aide the which where vpon this mountaine, and although our men vpon the first fury had won the top of the mountaine, so as then the enemie did fight on foot comming vp, the which was a great aduantage for our men. *Axalla* perciuing this aide mount vp, commanded also 2000 of our men to oppose themselues against this new troupe which mounted, and after them he sent 2500 more, and came to this point, that he himselfe alighted, determining for to leade the third succour, saying, that as soone as he

should perceiue another great troupe of footmen for to stirre, it was his turne to march. The Prince of *Thanais* vnderstanding that he would go thither in person, sent to beseech him for to suffer the Colonels of the footmen to performe that, and that it belonged vnto him only to command. Prince *Axalla* sent him word that this was a speciall match, and that if they did win the mountaine they should also win the battell; that he would this day obey him, and be his souldier. About this time he did see this great bodie moue, which was the remainder of the enemies footmen, the most part *Janizaries*, who at their coming, performed a wonderfull act: but in the end Prince *Axalla* comming with many of the brauest men about him, he put the enemies to flight, and did win the mountaine, and remained Maister thereof before he departed, and lodged there, intrenching himselfe on the enemies side. He left *Sinopes* to commaund there, who had this day gotten great honour. There died of our men fifteene thousand, and aboue thirtie thousand of the enemies: the fight endured from eight of the clocke euuen vntill night, our horsemen being lookers on, not any wayes able to helpe the footmen. The enemy hauing receiued this disgrace, marched ten good leagues that night, and forsooke his Campe as ouercome, but it was not without hauing the Prince of *Thanais* & *Stucan* at their taile, with his light horsemen, Prince *Axalla* continually following them, encamped within two leagues of them, hauing always the coast of the sea, and they bending towardes *Caramania*. Now the *Bassa* hauing receiued againe his spirits after this disgrace would encampe himselfe: but the Prince of *Thanais* discotented for that he had not fought, aduanced in such sort, that euē as we were ready to lodge

The discomfiture of the Bassa with his flight by night.

had newes that it behoued to aide him with diligence, the which Prince *Axalla* vnderstanding, caused the signe of battell to be giuen speedily, and he himselfe with all the horsemen aduanced forward. Now it was a little riuere he had passed ouer, not thinking the enemy had beene so neare vnto him: which the enemies perciuing, they comanded 10000 Persian horse to give the first charge, the which they hauing valiantly performed, our men being engaged, without any other delay, were constrained to come vnto the fight strong & resolutely, and defensed themselves: but the enemies were foorthwith backed with 20000 horse after them, the first charge not hauing beene but for to engage them: the fight was very furious, and our men were almost ouerthowne, when as behold tenne thousand Persian horse ledde by the Prince of *Halicen*, who set forwarde with great diligence, and came for to assist the Prince of *Thanais*, who fought valiantly, and had two horses alreadie killed ynder him, and did fight vpon the third: *Stucan* was *Stucan slain*, and all the light horsemen ouerthowne. Prince *Axalla* who perceiued the fault which the Prince of *Thanais* had committed, did bite his lip, saying, that God had giuen him a goodly victorie, and that he must loose the same through anothers folly, and turning him selfe vnto his companions, he said vnto them, that this was the day wherein they must fight, not for glorie, but for the safetie of all the Parthian people. Hauing sent forward with all diligence, tenne thousand horse more for to maintaine the fight, he came speedily vnto the order of fight, & aduanced forward with forty thousand horse, the which he put into three troupes: on front he followed the enemy, who had knit himselfe together, & put our men to flight, hauing had always the better

*The resl. nesse
of the Prince
of *Thanais*.*

in all the former charges they had giuen. The Prince of *Thanais* at the third charge was ouerthrowne to the ground as dead in the enemies power : but the 10000. horse whereof I did speake , compelled the enemie to make head against Prince *Axalla* , who would not suffer this occasion to be lost without reuenging the ouerthrowe of his men. Now hee did perceiue there was but two houres left of the day , the which caused him to presse forward vnto the battaile , and to constraine and force the enemie to come vnto the same. Now the Bassa had not as yet fought at all , who aduanced forward with fifteene thousand fresh horse , strengthening this charge: but Prince *Axalla* comming vnto the fight , he could not resist so great a troupe , & was ouerthrown. The Gouernour also of *Natolia* called *Lenaven* , who as yet had not fought , assited Prince *Axalla* , and had yet ten thousand horse , who gathering our men together againe , they all ioyned with *Axalla* , & repulsed the horsmen within their footmen , who giuing themselves ouer to flight , did forsake them : they could not stay our horsmen from assaulting them , so as they were almost all slaine , hauing fought euuen vntill night : notwithstanding there retired aboue twentie thousand in order of battaile , the most part of them Ianizaries , who passed ouer the water , and hindred our horsmen from hauing so large a victorie as they otherwise should haue had. Notwithstanding the nexte day we sent part of our horsmen vnder the Gouernour , for to keepe that none of the enemies should ioyne themselves together. They marched all that night led by their Captaine , whom they call *Aga* , the Ianizaries went in verie good order , speaking reproches of their horsmen , who had thus forsaken them : they fortified them-

The battaile
between *Axalla*
& the Bassa

Axalla his vi-
ctorie against
the Bassa.

themselues , being resolued all of them to die for the preservation of their Prince. After the dead were buried , and care taken for the wounded , the Prince *Axalla* left the Prince of *Thanais* sore wounded vpon one of his legges , and himselfe aduanced forward more then tenne leagues , the enemies horsemen being as yet knit together fourteene thousand horse strong. The Prince *Axalla* hauing left all his carriages , followed the enemies , who could not ioyne themselves with their Ianizaries , for we had gotten betweene them. The Ianizaries in this order wherein they marched , came along by the sea , the which Prince *Axalla* vnderstanding , he sent ten thousand horse after them , and commanded that all the footmen of the armie which had not yet fought , should march with diligence directly towarde them for to set vpon them: but they had gone two great iourneys , and embarked themselves at *Gallipoli* , for to passe ouer into Europe , and ioyne with *Ca-lepin* , who accused the Bassa for that hee had forsaken them , and was fled away from them. There were aboue fiftie and fortie thousand of the enemies slaine in this last day: these were two battels happily atchieued: there were slaine of our men aboue twentie thousand , and Prince *Stukan* was found amongst the dead vnderneath his horse , his target being vpon his face , all the whole armie made great lamentation for his death; he had greatly overshot himselfe , for he had like to haue ouerthrown all the whole armie. There was great ioy made for the safarie of the Prince of *Thanais* , so preserved amongst the dead. The Prince *Axalla* did greatly reprehend him for his rashnesse , hauing beene the occasion of the death of twentie thousand men , and to make the victorie vnto vs bloudie , the which

*The brasse re-
solution of the
Janizaries.*

*The Prince of
Thanais sore
wounded.*

*The Ianiza-
ries passe ouer
at Gallipoli
into Europe to
soyne with Ca-
lepin.*

*Axalla greatly
reprehended
the Prince of
Thanais for his
rashnesse.*

had not otherwise bene so, seeing we might haue had the same better cheape. The Prince of *Thanais* excused himselfe vpon *Stucan* and the light horsmen, who had aduanced themselues too farre, and also hee did not thinke to finde the maine forces of the enemies so neare at hand. Prince *Axalla* sayd vnto him, that hee was in great doubt least such a matter would fall out, and for this cause he had aduanced the armie as neare vnto the riuier as he could. But Prince *Axalla* notwithstanding all these great and happie victories, had not that which he desired, and shewing himselfe verie sad for that he knew the indisposition and sicknesse of the Emperour as incurable, he purposed to returne vnto the Court, to the end he might win the good fauour of the young Prince, whom hee knewe the Emperour his father had sent for. And hauing assembled the Counsell, he caused the dispatch to be read, the which he did send vnto the Emperour of the happie successe of the victorie: and in the meane time he sent after the enemies, to the end they should haue no more leisure, but only to get the mountaines, and hauing giuen this cōmandement, very early in the morning he followed after with the rest of the army. The greatest part of the Persians sent to sue for their pardon, and did come and yeeld themselues, the Prince their chiefe hauing bene slaine; the head of the Bassa was brought by a souldier, who had killed him in his retiring, at such time as he did see the Persians forsake him. This was the same Bassa, who had bene taken before in the battell wherein the Emperor *Baizet* was taken prisoner. The prince *Axalla* followed continually the small remnant of the enemies Armie that remained: they made foule warre vpon the *Mamelues*, because the most part of them had

*Axalla verie
sad for the in-
disposition of
the Emperour
his maister.*

*The Bassas
head brought
vnto Axalla.*

had falsified their faith giue vnto the Prince of *Thanais*, for the rest they made them faire warre. In lesse then fifteene dayes this armie was wholly ouerthowne, and *Calepin* retired into Europe, all the cities vpon the sea coast yeelded themselues. The winter drawing neare, the Armie demanded their pay, whereupon they tooke aduise, and hauing considered where the same might winter, it retired towards *Gonalache*. The Prince of *Thanais* was desirous to withdrawe himselfe into his gouernement, and leade backe his troupes, as also to preuent the nouelties the which the indisposition of the Emperour might bring foorth, and Prince *Axalla* and he, hauing sworne great friendship each vnto other, he went his way. The Prince hauing a determination to ouerthrow the Empire of Greece the next Sommet following, to the end he might take from the *Ottomans* all oportunitie of waxing great, seeing the Greeke Emperour did fauour them, and hauing conquered againe all that which *Calepin* had wonne, without any great resistance. The Prince of *Thanais* was gone twentie leagues or thereabout, when as behold there came a post, who brought newes of the Emperours death, the which did happen two dayes after he had receiued the newes of this victorie, hauing done nothing after the receipt of these news, but quietly end this life, speaking euuen vnto the last gaspe, with sound and good sense, taking order for the affaires of his Empire, without any alteration in his accustomed manner. The Prince *Axalla* hauing receiued these newes whereof he doubted, withdrew himselfe alone, and with all kinds of complaints, he bewailed the death of his good maister, he concealed his death certaine

*A league of
friendship
sworn between
Prince Axalla
and the Prince
of Thanais.*

*The death of
the Emperour
Tamerlan.*

*Axalla lamen-
ted the death
of the Emperor
Tamerlan pri-
vately, but bi-
tely.*

The worship
mind of Prince
Axalla to-
wards his new
Prince.

The meeting
of the Prince
of Thanais &
Prince Axalla
to what end.

dayes, and hauing with all diligence sent these newes vnto the Prince of *Thanais*, he desired that it would please him they might meete for to consult of their afaires. So they appointed a place to meete in about this accident. This post brought his dispatch signed with the name *Sautochis* our Emperour, by the which he was cōmaunded to leaue 40000 men with the Gouvernour of the borders, and himselfe to take his journey thorough Persia with his army. This post was followed by a fauorite of the new Emperour, who came vnto Prince *Axalla* for to gratifie him, & to make him an affectionat seruāt vnto the Emperour, as a person whom he knew very necessarie for to maintaine the greatnesse of his Empire, holding in his power at this day, the principall forces, besides the great authority hee had of long time enjoyed with the late Emperour: so as the quiet of the Empire depended more vpon Prince *Axalla*, then vpon any one, especially hauing had very lately so famous a victorie. This same did greatly procure him the good will, both of the Capaines and souldiers: but there was nothing but worthinesse in Prince *Axallaes* mind, who assured the new Prince of his faithfulness, and obedience vnto his commandements. I will not forget to declare, that during the time the armie did refresh it selfe, the Prince of *Thanais* came to meet with Prince *Axalla*, where interchangeably they did swere faith the one vnto the other, for the preseruation of their honours and estates. They thought it best to cōceale the death of the late Emperour, the one of them in the armie, the other in his gouernement: but euen as euill newes doth disperse abrode sooner then good, so did *Axalla* vpon his returne find these newes spread ouer all, the which he

percei-

perceiuing, thought good to cause the armie to bee assembled together, and there for to giue them vnderstanding of the losse of their Emperour. You did neuer see so many cries, and so much shedding of teares: hee exhorted them vnto the same faithfulness and affection towards the young Prince his sonne, for the honour of the late Emperour: the which they promised, euen vnto the meanest souldier. *Axalla* caused the oath of *Axallaes* faith fulnesse vnto the Prince. *The lamenta-
tion for the
Emperours
death by the
whole armie.*

The Emperour
Tamerl an his
discourse vnto
his sonne before
all his counsell
lying vpon his
death bed.

in the presence of *Odmar*, and of all his Councell, he discoursed of the course of his life euer since the death of his father *Zachetay*, who being giuen ouer to contemplation, had left vnto him three personages neare vnto his person, for to assist and counsell him, of whom (said he) there remaineth none aliue at this present but only *Odmar*, being the youngest of the three, the which had brought him vp as well in the actions of warre, as the affaires of peace, whereof you may iudge by the great enlargement he hath added vnto *Zachetay*, the which he had obtained as well through his great reputation, as by force; and that the hope euery one conceiued of his vertue in his youth, had called him vnto the full succession of the Tartarian Empire. For hauing by the counsell of these three, as fathers, enterprised the warre against the *Moscouite*, whose armes were at that time the most to be feared of all Asia, this enterprise hauing had good successe, not onely all his neighbours, but all his kinsmen, desired to haue peace and friendship with his armes, and the Emperour his vnkle, whose purpose was to deuide his Empires amongst his Princes, whom he loued, for my valour chaunged his determination, hearing my reputation to resound; and that I had in this young age thorough my good conduct, ouercome the common enemie vnto our Nation: whereupon I was iudged by him worthie to commaund the same, and sending to offer his daughter vnto me in mariage, he made choise of me to succeed him in this monarchy, hoping that I would ease his old age, and that I would guide the yeares which remained vnto him in peace, thorough my trauell, and the reputation of my armes. He was not deceiued in me, hauing honoured him alwaies as my Lord, and loued him as another father,

carying

carying my selfe so cunningly during his life, that at such time as his death happened, I kept this great Empire, without any cōmotion therin, but rather all subiection and obedience. I will tell thee my son, that I did not only succeed him in the Empire, but also in the loue of all his seruants, whom thou doest see about me, who haue serued me faithfully thesventie yeaeres, euer since I haue enjoyed this great large countrie, vnto whom the late Emperour my vnkle did promise only recompence of their seruice, but my selfe haue bene so much acccompanied with good hap, that I haue bene able to giue vnto them. I leaue vnto thee then these seruants, who are worthy to be kings; honor them, and raigne with them: they will be faithfull vnto thee, and haue remembrance of me for to serue thee faithfully, and do know how to excuse thy youth and guide the same: beleeue their counsell. And taking *Odmar* by the hand, pulled him on the right side of the place where he was set, and looking vpon the other side, he turned vnto the young Prince his sonne, saying vnto him: This side and place here shall bee kept for *Axalla*, who is absent, whose faithfulness and affection he had prooued, the worthy acts of whom were so commendable vnto all this Empire and himselfe, that he would speake no more vnto him of the same; that he commanded him to beleeue their counsell euen as he had done, wherein he had found great good; that the Prince of *Thanaïs* was his kinsman, that he should esteeme of his faithfulness, and serue himselfe therewith; that he might assure himselfe he wold yeeld him obedience, euen to the spending of his owne life. In the end that hee recommended vnto him so manie worthy Lords and Captaines, who had serued him

faithfully in so many warres he had made for the greatnessse of the Parthian Empire, ouer the which hee had left him to commaund without anie desert but for a faire hope, and for that he was his son. And giuing his hand vnto all the Princes and Lords, which he had cau-
sed to come before him, hee presented them vnto his sonne, saying vnto him, that this was his Empire and good fortune, and demaunding his seale of the great Chanceller, hee put it into the handes of the young Prince, and caused the same to be redeliuert vntohim againe, and hauing continued a certaine space without speaking, he said vnto him: My sonne, loue iustice, minister it as well vnto the litle as vnto the great, this is your dutie, and he shall ease you therein sometymes. Remember your self, that the weapons which you haue in your hands, are but to make execution of the same: this is the cause therefore that it behoueth the warres you begin be iustly enterprised, and then will they haue happy successe. As his speech was directed vnto the young Prince, he had the Chanceller neare him; wher-
upon during the same, there was a great noise more then was accustomed in the Emperors outward chamber, and asking what the matter was, they caused a Lord to enter in, sent from *Axalla* (nowe the Emperour had nothing at all left the care of his affaires, as he was accustomed, although they were somwhat the more slowely dispatched,) who brought newes of the happy successe of two battailes wonne in *Natolia*, by

Newes brought vnto the Emperour Tamerlan by his sonne Axalla the Armie led by Prince *Axalla*, victorious ouer *Calepinis* forces; and declaring this happy successe in his affaires, the messenger of these newes said vnto him, that he hoped the next sommer his person marching forward, the Empire of *Greece* should be easie for him to

to conquer, seeing the astonishment the enemies had.
He answered him, that he neuer doubted of his souldiers affections, but that hee was called by a greater then himselfe, and vnto a more happie conquest, seated in a more high place, whither he must needs go. Tell *Axalla* (said he vnto the Lord which spake vnto him) that from hence forward hee must receiue my sonnes commandements. And drawing a ring from off his thombe, cōmanded that it shold be carried vnto Prince *Axalla*, to signifie vnto him the contentment he had in his seruice, and in witnesse of his faithfulness. He demaunded in generall of the health of all those of his Armie, recommending them vnto his sonne, euerie one according to their vertues and deserthes: amongst the rest he recommended the seruices of the Prince of *Thanais*, commaunding his sonne to honour him as his kinsman, and to continue him in the charges and honours the which he had put into his hands, for that he did deserue the same; that hee should be well serued by him. And returning againe to speake, he commanded his sonne, that if he committed his armes vnto any man to be cōmanded, it shold be vnto Prince *Axalla*, a thing notwithstanding which he did counsell him to do the lateſt he could, because it was ſo precious a thing, and that if it were poſſible, he ſhould not truſt it with anie man but himſelfe; that it was fit for the Parthian Emperors to be in the middeſt of their armes, & amongſt the ſoldiers, euen as householders are with their children, & that by this meaneſ he ſhould preſerue this great Empire, which he left to him by inheritance, hoping in time he would deserue it by his vertues. And as his laſt wordes he perſuaded him to be gentle and curteous vnto his friendes, and

Tamerlan his speech vnto the messenger, and to the Prince his ſonne.

Tamerlan his
last speech &
blessing vnto
his sonnes.

terrible vnto his enemies, and if they demaund peace of you, do not in any case refuse it, and forgiue your particular occasions, & do iustice for the loue of your people. This yong Prince had the tears in his eyes, and the Emperour contrariwise uttering these words, had a maiestie in his countenance more then accustomed, and causinge his sonne to go out, he sent him vnto the Empresse for to comfort her. And hauing againe called for *Odmar*, he recommended vnto him the young yeares of his sonne, the loue and faithfullnesse vnto his seruice, willing that his yonger son should be brought vp to obey his elder brother: for of the loue and agreement of the two brethren dependeth (said he) the quiet and preseruation of this estate: and sending for them both, he was desirous to give them his last blessing. And they being come before him, he commanded the younger to obey his elder brother; and both of them together to honour the Empresse: and beginning to giue them his blessing, touching the head of *Sautochis*, he pressed it downe, and touching the head of the yonger, hee raised it vp, lifting vp his chinne, a presage that *Letrochis* the younger should be lifted vp vnto the Empire, and should be the ouerthrowe of his elder brother, as it fell out afterwards through their diuisions, the which caused the destruction of the Empire. Night being come he slept verie sweetly, and abour the breake of day, according to his custome, hee caused them to be called vnto him which had any busynesse with him: and *Axallas* dispatch being presented vnto him for to signe, vpon this last victorie obtained, hee signed it without any change of countenance, & after turning himselfe, a slumbring tooke him againe, and they perceiued he passed away vnto another life, they

ran

The death of
the Emperour
Tamerlan.

Prince Sauto-
chis proclamed
Emperour and
signed dispat-
ches.

Prince Sauto-
chis 19. years
olde when he
came vnto his
Empire.

ran for to call the Emperour his sonne, who as soone as he was come shut his eyes, powring out teares, as also did all his seruants. The Prince *Sautochis* his eldest sonne within two houres after was proclaimed Emperour throughouit all the whole Armie, and dispatches were made from all partes to aduertise the Gouernors of prouinces thereof, the letters being signed with the hand of the new Emperour, who hauing assembled all the Armie together, he made an oration vnto the Captaines and soldiers, and caused them to make a generall muster, gratifying all the ancient seruantes of the Emperour his father: he would not dispose of anie thing before he had seene Prince *Axalla*, and was ioyned with the imperiall Armie. This young Prince, when he came vnto this Empire was nineteene yeares olde, he was faire, and had much of the Emperor his fathers naturall disposition. They hoped that he would wilie (through the good counsell that was about him) main-taine this great Empire: but they feared greatlie the young Prince *Letrochis* his brother (whom his mother loued) would cause diuisions, as it happened in the times of their great grandfather betweene two brethren, who had bene occasion of the destrucci- on of their estate, the which was relieved and lifted vp againe vnto his height by the valour of

Tamerlan.

FINIS.